[redacted]

METHOD GASPEY-OTTO-SAUER.

ELEMENTARY
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

DR. J. WRIGHT.

SECOND EDITION
with vocabulary.

LONDON.
DAVID NUTT, 270 Strand. DULAU & Co., 37 Soho Square.
SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON & Co., Fetter Lane, Fleet Street.
NEW YORK.
BRENTANO'S, 31 Union Square. F. W. CHRISTERN, 254 Fifth Avenue. THE INTERNATIONAL NEWS COMPANY, 83 and 85 Duane Street. E. STEIGER & Co., 25 Park Place.
BOSTON.
T. H. CASTOR & Co., Succ. to C. Schoenhoff, 23 School Street. C. A. KOEHLER & Co., 149 A Tremont Street.
HEIDELBERG.
JULIUS GROOS.
1900.

PREFACE.

We have been induced to issue the present elementary work in compliance with the repeated request of many teachers who have found the larger French grammar too difficult for younger pupils. We deemed it advisable to make the Accidence fairly complete; only so much of the Syntax has been introduced as was absolutely necessary for the understanding of a simple sentence. The exercises are of a most elementary character, and have been specially constructed so as to illustrate the various inflections. Although the conjugations have been given in full we thought it best to postpone the application of the Subjunctive mood until the pupil is so far advanced as to be able to use the larger work.

Leipzig.

J. Wright.

[redacted]

CONTENTS.

PART I.

PART II.

APPENDIX.

PART III.

PART I.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. Letters of the Alphabet.

The French Alphabet consists of 26 letters, which are represented as follows:

		Name.			Name.
A,	a,	ah.	N,	n,	enn.
B,	b,	bey.	O,	o,	o.
C,	c,	cey.	P,	p,	pey.
D,	d,	dey.	Q,	q,	(kü).
E,	e,	ey.	R,	r,	err.
F,	f,	eff.	S,	s,	ess.
G,	g,	shey.	T,	t,	tey.
H,	h,	ash.	U,	u,	(ü).
I,	i,	ee.	V,	v,	vey.
J,	j,	chee.	(W,	w,	(vey).
(K,	k),	kah.	X,	x,	iks.
L,	l,	ell.	Y,	y,	ee greck.
M,	m,	emm.	Z,	z,	zed.

Bey, cey etc. . . . are simple sounds, not diphthongs, the y only indicates that the preceding e is long. Of the above letters, **a, e, i, o, u** and y are vowels, the rest are consonants. Besides these, there are in French compound vowels, diphthongs and compound consonants.

k and **w** only occur in words of foreign origin.

§ 2. Orthographical Signs.

1) The apostrophe, (') which denotes the elision of a vowel (**a, e,** or **i**) before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** mute as: *l'or* for: *le or* (gold); *s'il* for: *si il.*

2) The diæresis, (¨) which is placed over the vowels **e, i** and **u** to show that these vowels are to be pronounced distinct from the other vowels with which they are connected, as: *haïr* (to hate), *Noël* (christmas).

3) The cedilla, (¸) which is placed under the letter **c** before **a, o, u** to indicate that it has the same sound as **s** in English *sit*: *nous plaçons* (we place), *reçu*, received.

4) The hyphen (-), which joins two words as it were in one: *as-tu?* (hast thou?), *dit-il?* (does he say?).

§ 3. Accents.

There are in French three accents.

1) The acute accent, (´) which is only placed over **e**, and indicates that the **e** has a close sound: as *donné* (given), *vérité* (truth).

2) The grave accent, (`) when placed over **e**, indicates that the **e** has an open sound, as: **père** (father); **mère** (mother); it is placed over **a, u,** and sometimes **e** to distinguish words which are spelt alike: as *ou* (or), *où* (where); *la* (the), *là* (there), *des* (of the, some), *dès* (from, since).

3) The circumflex accent, (ˆ) which may be placed over any vowel to indicate that it has to be pronounced long: as *pâte* (dough), *bête* (beast), *gîte* (lodging), *côte* (coast), *flûte* (flute).

Tonic Accent.

The tonic accent in French stands on the last syllable, as: nous aim**ons** (we love), le che**val** (the horse), except when the word ends in -**e** mute; in this case the tonic accent is thrown back on the penultimate, as: **ta**ble, **aima**ble etc.

§ 4. Pronunciation of the Vowels.

1) Simple vowels.

A, a, long or short a has the same sound as English **a** in father: as *âme* (soul), *la*, the.

E, e, represents various sounds.

1) In unaccented monosyllabic words it has almost the same sound as **e** in German **Gabe**, or the sound of **i** in English *bird*, but shorter: as *le* (the), *me* (me), etc.

At the end of words of more than one syllable it is always mute: as *table, rare*, etc.

2) Marked with the acute accent it has a closed sound: as: *donné* (given), *vérité* (truth).

3) Marked with the grave accent or circumflex it has **a** more or less open sound, as: *père* (father), *tête* (head).

In the middle of words the unaccented **e** has the first of the three sounds when it closes a syllable, as: *regard* = *re-gard*: it has the second sound when followed by **d**, **r**, or **z** silent: as *pied* = *pié*, *donner* = *donné*, *assez* = *assé*.

It has the third sound, when followed by **r** sounded or another consonant: *fer* = *fère*, *vert* = *vère*.

Take care never to pronounce French **e** like **a** in English *late*.

4) **e** has the sound of French **a** in *femme*, *solennel*, *hennir* and in adverbs ending in *-emment*: as *prudemment* (prudently).

I, i, short **i** has the same sound as **i** in English *give*, as: *il* (he), *ceci*, this. Long **i** has nearly the same sound as: English **ee** in *feet*, as: *gîte* (lodging).

O, o, when long has the sound of **o** in the English word *note* (but without the final short **u** of the English pronunciation): as *rose*, *côte* (coast). When short it sounds nearly like **o** in the English word: *loss*; as: *mot* (word), *trop* (too much).

U, u, French **u** has no equivalent in English. It is formed by the **u**-rounding of the mouth combined with the **i**-position of the tongue: *tu* (thou), *lune* (moon). It is mute before **q** as: *quatre* (four), and between **g** and **e** or **i**, as in *guerre* (war), *guide*; except in words ending in *guë*, as: *aiguë* (acute) *(fem.)*.

Y, y, occurs mostly in words of foreign origin, and is pronounced like **i**; as: *syllabe*; *physique*.

§ 5. Compound Vowels and Diphthongs.

Ai, Ei, ai and **ei** represent the same sound; namely **è** when medial, and **é** when final; as: *pair* (egual) = *père*, *faire* (to make), *gai*, gay; *peine*, trouble.

Au, Eau, au, eau are monophthongs, and have the same sound as French long **o**: *haute*, high *(fem.)*; *maux*, evils; *bateau*, boat.

Ay, ay, is pronounced like French **ai** and **i**; as: *pays* (country) = *pai-is*.

When followed by another vowel, the second **i** has the sound of English **y** consonant; as: *essayer* (to try) = *essai-yé.*

Eu, oeu, eu, and **œu** have nearly the same sound as **u** in the English word *hurt*; (*peu,* little, *cœur,* heart).

Oi, Oe. The second element of these two diphthongs has the sound of a very short **a**; as: *foi,* faith, or somewhat longer, as in *poêle,* stove.

Ou. Short **ou** is like **oo** in English *foot*: *vous,* you; *toux,* cough.

Long **ou** like **oo** in English *fool*: *cour,* court; *croûte,* crust.

Oy, Uy. There the **y** has the force of **ii** or rather of an English **y** consonant joined to a French **i.** This **i** together with the preceding **o** or **u** forms the sound of the diphthong **oi,** or **ui,** and the second **i** takes the sound of the English **y** (in you): as *foyer* = *foa-i-yé; appuyer* to support.

The other French compound vowels are **ia, ie, ieu, io, oui, ua, ue, ui.** But as they present no difficulties, we shall not discuss them here.

§ 6. Pronunciation of the Consonants.

General rules.

1) Consonants are generally sounded in the middle of words, except when the same consonant is doubled, in which case only one is sounded.

2) Final consonants are generally silent, when not followed by a vowel.

B, b, has the same sound as in English: *bas,* low; *bon,* good. It is mute when final: *plom*b, lead.

C, c, has the sound of Englich **k,** before **a, ai, au, o, œ, ou, u** and consonants: *car,* because; *cause; clair,* clear; it has the same sound at the end of a word: *avec,* with; *duc,* duke; it is, however, often not pronounced at all at the end of a word, as: *tabac,* tobacco; *blanc,* white. It has the sound of **s** in English *sit,* before **e, i, y**: as *ce,* this, *ici,* here; and when it has the cedilla, as: *reçu,* received; *leçon,* lesson. **cc** before **è** and **i** has the sound of **ks,** as: *succès,* success; in other cases **cc** has

the sound of **k**. **ch** has usually the sound of **sh**: *chez*, at the house of; *chose*, thing.

D, d, has the same sound as in English; *dur*, hard; *admis*, admitted; at the end of words it is silent, except in proper names, and when the next word begins with a *vowel* or **h** mute; in the latter case it has the sound of **t**: as *grand homme* = gran-tomme.

F, f, has the same sound as in English, as: *faire*, to make, *frapper*, to strike. Final **f** is mute in *clef*, key; *chef-d'œuvre*, master-piece; and also in the plurals: *cerfs*, *œufs*, *bœufs*, *nerfs*, and in *neuf* (nine) before consonants.

G, g, before **a, ai, o, ou, u** and before all consonants is hard as in the English word garden, as: *gare*, *gai*, *goutte*, *gros*, *glace*, *guide*, *guerre*. — Before **e, i, y,** it has the soft sound of a **sh** or rather of **s** in «pleasure», the same as the French **j**. Ex.: *gerbe*, *gémir*, *gilet*, *gelé*, *George*, *gymnase*. — It is generally silent when final, as: *faubourg*, *sang*, *rang*, *bourg*, *long*, *hareng* etc.; further in *doigt*, finger; *vingt*, twenty; *legs*, last will, and in *signet*. It is sounded in *joug*, yoke. See § 7.

H, h is sometimes silent, as: *homme*, *habit*, *hélas*, *herbe*, *histoire*, *honnête*, *horreur*, *humanité*, and sometimes aspirate, as in la *hache*, le *héros*, le *hibou*, *hideux*, la *haie*, la *halle*, la *hâte*, la *honte*, le *hameau*, le *hasard*, *haïr*, *haut*, *hardi*, *hors*, *homard*, *heurter*, *hurler*, *hotte*, *haricot*, *harpe*, *Henri*, *hanneton*, *harangue*, *hareng*, *houblon*, *houille*, *huit*.

J, j is sounded like a soft **sh** or as the letter **s** in pleasure, but softer, as: *jadis*, *jeune*, *jour*, *jaune*, *joli*.

L, l, quite as in English: la *loi*, *leur*, *aller*, *balle*. It is mute in le *fils* (pronounce fiss), the son, and le *pouls*, the pulse. It is further mute at the end of most words ending in **il**, as: le *fusil*, (the gun); le *baril*, *outil*, *persil*, *gentil*, *etc.* (see also § 8).

M, m and **N, n,** as in English: *ma*, *mer*, *marais*, *ami*, *mot*; *mappe*, *nette*, *nid*, *année*.

mn are pronounced **nn** in: *automne* (automn) and in *condamner*, to condemn. In other words both letters are articulated, as: *Agamem-non*, *calomnie*, *insomnie*, *etc.*

For **m** and **n** nasal see § 7.

P, p corresponds in sound with the same letter in English: *pas, père, part, pelle, apporter, appris.* — It is not heard at the end of words, as: *tro*p (pron. tro), too much; *beaucoup* (pronounce boku), much. — It is further mute in *sept* (= set), *baptême, compte, dompter, prompt; temps*, and some others.

Ph, ph is sounded as **f**, thus: *philosophe, phrase, prophète.*

Qu, qu has commonly the sound of **k**: *qui* (= ki), *que, quatre, quoi.* At the end of the two words: le *coq* (the cock), and *cinq* (five) it loses its **u**, but sounds nevertheless as **k**.

qua has the sound of koua in a few words of three and more syllables, thus in *équateur* (equator), *quadrupède, aquatique, etc.*

R, r as in English: *rare, roi, rouge, faire, mer, fer, hier,**) *notre, finir.* — It is silent at the end of words of two and more syllables ending in **er** and **ier**, as: *donner* (pronounced *donné*), *berger, parler, pommier, prunier, ouvrier.* — **r** is also silent in *monsieur.*

Exceptions to this rule are the following words in which the final **r** is sounded: *amer*, bitter; *l'hiver*, winter; la *cuiller*, the spoon; *l'enfer*, hell, and a few others less in use.

rr is sounded as one **r**, when followed by an **e** mute, as: *ter*re, *bar*re, *tonner*re, *bour*re.

S, s has two sounds, a hissing or hard = **s**, and a soft one = **z**. It has the hissing sound, as in English, at the beginning of words and before or after a consonant, as: *sel, sur, soir, sable, sort, statue, esprit, danser, lorsque, assez.* — But it has the soft sound of **z** between two vowels**): *rose, raser, raison, aisé, misère.*

Sc before **e, i** and **y** is sounded as double **ss**: *scène, Scipion, science.* — But **sc** before other vowels and **l, r** has the sound of **sk**, as: *scabreux, scorpion, esclave, scrupule.*

Final **s** is silent, as: *repas, alors, mes, tes, cas, les; livres, tapis, etc.*

---

*) *hier*, yesterday, is considered monosyllabic.

**) Except in compound words, in which it has the hard sound, as: *entre-sol, parasol.*

But it is sounded in le *fils* (pronounced fiss), the son; l'*ours*, the bear; la *vis*, the screw; les *mœurs*, the manners; *gratis*, gratis; le *lis*, the lily, and in most foreign names, as: *Mars, Pallas, Vénus, Minos, Régulus, etc.*

T, t has generally the sound of the English **t**, as: *ta, tasse, table, très, tantôt, atteler.*

ti however is sounded like **si**: 1) in the final syllables: *-tial, -tiel, -tieux, -tie* and *-tion* (not *-stion*), as: *partial* (pronounce parsial), *minutieux, inertie, Béotie, prophétie, nation, perfection;* 2) in the words: *initier, balbutier, patient, patience, satiété, insatiable,* and some others, 3) final *-tien* is sounded *sien*, in names of nations and proper names, as: *Égyptien, Dioclétien.*

t is not heard at the end of words, as: *et*, and; *l'habit, plat, bout, tout.**)

Exceptions to this rule are: le *fat*, le *but, sept, net, huit,* la *dot, direct, exact, brut, chut, strict, correct, suspect,* in which the **t** is sounded.

th is sounded as a single **t**: *pathos, Thibet, théâtre, théologie.*

V, v as in English: *vase, vertu, vérité, vrai, voûte, vu, savant, avec, active.*

X, x is sounded like **gs** at the beginning and in the middle of words, as: *Xavier, axe, extrême, vexer, maxime, excuse.* — It sounds like **z** in *deuxième, dixième;* as **ss** in *dix, six, soixante, Bruxelles, Cadix, Xerxès* = *Xercès.*

x is mute at the end of words: *deux, doux, voix, maux, travaux.* — However, when before a vowel, it is sounded like **s** and carried over to it, as: *dix‿ans, deux enfants, un doux‿accent, etc.*

Z, z as in English: *zèle, gaze, zône, gazelle, Cortez.* It is silent in *assez, nez* and *chez,* and in the 2nd pers. plur. of verbs: *vous‿avez, donnez-moi, etc.*

§ 7. Pronunciation of the nasal sounds.

A nasal sound arises when **m** or **n**, preceded by a vowel, closes a syllable, unless there be a second **m** or

*) *ent* is not sounded in the termination of the 3rd pers. plur. of verbs: *ils parlent* = il parl, they speak.

n after it. As these sounds do not exist in the English language, they cannot be represented for want of appropriate signs. They must therefore be heard from the master and carefully imitated.

They are the following:

am, **an**, **em**, **en** = a͡n: *rampe, champ, camp, ambre, Adam.* *dans, banc, lance, manger, vanter.* *remplir, temps, embarras, empire.* *en, mentir, engager, facilement, enlever.*

aim, **ain**, **ein**, **im**, **in**, **ym** = ai͡n: *faim, essaim, daim.* *bain, pain, sain, craindre, crainte.* *sein, ceinture, peindre, atteindre, feindre.* *imposer, importe, imbu, impie.* *pin, crin, vin, inconnu, rincer.* *thym, nymphe, symphonie.*

ian = ia͡n: *viande, pliant, criant, souriant.*

ien = ia͡n: in all nouns and adjectives, where **ien** is followed by any other consonant than **n**, as: *science, patient, patience, expédient.*

ien = ia͡in: when **n** closes the syllable, as: *bien, chien, rien, ancien,* and in the irregular tenses of the two verbs *tenir* and *venir,* as: *tiens, viendra.*

om, **on** = o͡n: *ombre, plomb, compte, compris.* *bon, non, ronde, chanson, bonbons.*

ion = io͡n: *action, passion, fluxion, talion, question.*

eun, **um**, **un** = eu͡n: *parfum, humble.* *brun, chacun, tribun, défunt, l'un.* *à jeûn.*

oin between o͡ain and o͡an: *foin, coin, pointu, joindre, lointain, moins, moindre.*

Remarks. 1) The syllables **am, an,** and **im, in,** do not take the nasal sound, when **m** or **n** are doubled, as: *constamment, année, imminent, inné, immoler, innocent.* Further in the proper names: *Sélim, Ibrahim;* but in *Joachim* and *Benjamin* **im** and **in** are nasal.

2) This is also the case with the word *ennemi;* in all the other words *enn* takes the nasal sound: *solennel* (is pronounced: solannel), *ennoblir, hennir, etc.*

3) In the words *examen, memento, agenda* and *Mentor,* **en** has the sound of **ain.**

§ 8. Pronunciation of the liquid sounds.

There are two kinds of liquid sounds in French: 1) **i** with **l** or **lle**, in which case it is called in French: "*l mouillé*", and 2) **gn**.

1) **l** preceded by **i**, when final or double, is ordinarily liquid as in the English word brilliant, only somewhat softer. As this sound is attended with some difficulty, it must be heard from a teacher. The liquid sound changes according to the preceding vowel. Ex.:

*ail, aill-: travail, bataille, caillou.**)
eil, eill-: soleil, réveil, merveilleux.
euil, euill-: deuil, veuillez, feuillage.
œil, œill-: œil, œillet.
ouil, ouill-: fenouil, bouillon, brouillard.

Exceptions. **Il** and **ill** are not liquid, but fully pronounced in the following words: *il,* he; le *fil,* the thread; l'*exil,* the exile; *vil,* mean; *tranquille,* quiet; *mil* and *mille,* a thousand, etc.; further in all words beginning with *ill-, mill-* and *vill-,* as: *illégal,* illegal; un *million,* a million, la *ville,* the town; le *village,* the village, etc.

2) **gn** has a liquid sound resembling the last syllable of the English word *onion.* Ex.: *signal* is pronounced, as if it were spelt *sinnial;* thus: *rogné, compagnon, joignez, poignard, saignée, mignonne; règne, peigne, ligne, digne, Cologne, oignon.*

§ 9. Promiscuous Examples.

1) La mère, le père, le frère, la sœur, les chats, les chiens, les vaches. — Après, avare, porter, fer, boulanger, bannir, dirai, diront, épais, espoir, été, livre. — Moi, beau, quand, personne, besoin, faux, peine, cœur, Dieu, bout, tout. — Notre, monde, mer, vallée, ancien, cheveu, archer.

2) Côte, côté, coton, rond, mentir, un, une, brun, brune, jatte, chatte, rouge, mouche, chose, rose, rosser, dix, dixaine, péril, sommeil, grille, compagnie, mouillé, gagné, bétail, linge, aigle, longueur, douze, nation, essentiel, ambitieux, profession, jardinage, malheureux, l'hirondelle, choisir, grand, bain, pile.

---

*) *NB.* The pupil is requested to observe that the **i** always stands *before* the liquid **l**.

3) Scorpion, calomnie, baptême, cuiller, temps, cinquième, qui, que, quoi, pâte, répété, bonnet, cap, verre, fier, abîme, finirai, bateau, mantelet, paysan, œuvre, ouvrage, montagne. Donc, chrétien, hurler, apprentissage, poison, poisson, potion, population, leçon, gâteaux, printemps, reçois, jambon, agneau, Paris, Londres, Vienne, Vénitien.

§ 10. Of the „liaison" (linking).

Euphony being one of the principal conditions of French pronunciation, words ending with a consonant are, in reading, generally carried over to the initial letter of the next word, when this begins with a vowel or **h** mute. Some words however, especially *et* (and), which is pronunced é, should never be carried over.

Reading Exercise.

Les‿hommes, les‿enfants, des‿arbres, nos‿amis, vos‿habits, nous‿avons, ils‿ont, pas‿encore, avec‿un‿enfant, ses plus cruels‿ennemis; songez‿à vos‿affaires. Vous‿en souvenez-vous‿encore? Elles‿apprenaient‿à lire. Peu de temps‿après. Vous‿êtes‿un‿enfant. Les Hollandais sont‿industrieux. Cet‿habit est‿à moi. Nous‿aurons‿eu. Mon malheureux‿ami. Un grand‿homme. Ne vous‿en‿êtes-vous pas‿aperçu? A laquelle de vos‿amies envoyez-vous cette rose? Cet‿homme avait‿été autrefois‿à Paris.

§ 11. Orthography of words which are very similar in both languages.

1) Most words ending in **-al, -ble, -ace, -ance, -ence, -ice, -acle, -age, -ege, -ge, -ile, -ine, -ion, -ant, -ent,** are spelled alike in both languages, only, when French, the **e** at the beginning or in the middle of a word often takes an accent. Ex.:

-ace: face, force, surface; *ince:* province.
-acle: oracle, miracle, spectacle, obstacle.
-age: page, rage, image, cage, bandage.
-al: animal, moral, principal, cardinal.
-ance: lance, complaisance, chance, ignorance.
-ant: éléphant, constant, arrogant, ignorant, élégant.
-ble: fable, bible, terrible, noble, double.
-ege: collége, privilége, siége, sacrilége.
-ence: diligence, patience, présence, prudence.

-ent: compliment, fréquent, content, élément, violent.
-ge: charge, orange, déluge, refuge.
-ice: avarice, édifice, justice, précipice.
-ile: docile, fragile, débile.
-ine: mine, machine, marine, famine, héroine.
-ion: nation, action, religion, légion, opinion.
-ude: prélude, habitude, servitude.

2) Many other words require only the change of termination, in the following manner:

-ary into *aire,* as: military *militaire.*
-ory = *oire,* as: glory *gloire;* history *histoire.*
-cy = *ce,* as: constancy *constance.*
-ty = *té,* as: liberty *liberté;* beauty *beauté.*
-ous = *eux,* as: vigo(u)rous, *vigoureux.*
-our = *eur,* as: favour *faveur;* honour *honneur.*
-ive = *if,* as: active *actif;* passive *passif.*
-ry = *rie,* as: fury *furie.*
-or = *eur,* as: doctor *docteur.*

3) Many English verbs ending in **-ise, -use, -ute,** become French by adding an **r** to the final, as:

-ise: to baptise, to realise, — *baptiser, réaliser.*
-use: to excuse, to abuse, — *excuser, abuser.*
*-ute:**) to dispute, to refute, — *disputer, refuter.*

4) Most English verbs ending in **-ate, -ish** and **-fy** become French by changing the final, as follows:

-ate into *er:* to abrogate, moderate, — *abroger, modérer.*
-ish = *ir:* to abolish, accomplish, — *abolir, accomplir.*
-fy = *fier:* to rectify, justify, — *rectifier, justifier.*

---

*) The verbs ending in *-bute* and *-tute* are excepted from this rule and become French by changing *-bute* into *-buer* and *-tute* into *-tuer,* as: to contribute, *contribuer;* substitute, *substituer.*

PART II.

LESSON I.

Definite Article.

In the French language there are only *two genders*, viz. the *masculine* and *feminine*. This distinction applies also to inanimate objects, which are either masculine or feminine.

1) To indicate this distinction of gender the *definite* article is prefixed to substantives, and has a peculiar form for each gender: *le* before a masculine, *la* before a feminine substantive; *les* in the plural for both genders. Examples:

Masc.	*Fem.*
le livre, the book.	*la rose*, the rose.
le père, the father.	*la mère*, the mother.
le roi, the king.	*la reine*, the queen.

2) The articles *le* and *la* in the singular lose their vowels and take the apostrophy *(l')*, before a noun beginning either with a vowel or *h* mute, so as to form but one word. Ex.:

Masc.	*Fem.*
l'ami, the friend.	*l'amie*, the (female) friend.
l'homme, the man.	*l'histoire*, (the) history.

et, and; *bon*, good; *le pain*, the bread; *le chien*, the dog; *de*, of.

Sing.	*J'ai*, I have.	*Plur.*	*nous‿avons*, we have.
	tu as, thou hast.		*vous‿avez*, you "
	il / *elle* } *a*, he, she or it has.		*ils‿ont* / *elles‿ont* } they "

Exercise. 1. M.B.5.245

1 Le roi a le bon chien. Nous avons le pain. La reine
2 a le livre. Le père et la mère ont le bon pain. L'ami de
3 la reine a la rose. Elle a le bon livre. Tu as l'histoire de
4 l'homme.

F.B.6.201 **Exercise. 2.** V.B.4.504 M

5 I have the good book. The king and (the) queen have
6 the rose. She has the rose of the queen. T

book of the man. Whe have the bread. The friend of the queen has the rose.

LESSON II.

Indefinite Article.

The indefinite article **a, an** is expressed in French by **un** for the masc. and **une** for the fem. as: *un roi*, a king; *un ami*, a friend; *une mère*, a mother.

Le chien, the dog.	*la fleur*, the flower.
le jardin, the garden.	*la tante*, the aunt.
l'oncle, the uncle.	*la pomme*, the apple.
le cheval, the horse.	*vu*, seen; *donné*, given; *à*, to.
le frère, the brother.	*la sœur*, the sister.

Exercise. 3.

J'ai un ami. Nous avons vu le roi et la reine. Il a le bon chien de la tante. Tu as donné la fleur à la sœur de la reine. J'ai un bon cheval. Ils ont donné une fleur à la mère. Vous avez un bon père. Ils ont une fleur. Elle a une pomme. L'oncle a le chien. La tante a vu le jardin. Le frère a un bon cheval.

Exercise. 4.

We have a good dog. I have seen the king. She has given the flower to the aunt. The king has a good horse. The man has given a rose to the queen. You have a good father. The sister has given an apple to the man. They have seen the queen. The uncle has given a flower to the queen. I have the horse. The uncle has a good friend. The father has the garden.

LESSON III.

Sing.	*Ai-je?* have I?	*Plur.*	*avons-nous?* have we?
	as-tu? hast thou?		*avez-vous?* have you?
	a-t-il? has he?		*ont-ils?* have they?
	a-t-elle? has she?		*ont-elles?* have they (f.)?

et, and; *aussi*, also; *dans*, in.

Masc.	*Fem.*
mon, my.	*ma*, my.
ton, thy.	*ta*, thy.
son, his.	*sa*, her.

Exercise. 5.

Avez-vous vu le roi et la reine? As-tu une fleur? Ont-ils un bon père? Ai-je la rose? Il a donné une pomme à

1 sa sœur. Mon père a un chien. Avez-vous aussi un chien?
2 J'ai vu ma mère dans le jardin. Ton frère a un cheval.
3 A-t-il aussi un chien? Mon oncle a donné une rose à ma
4 mère. As-tu vu ma tante? Mon frère a vu le cheval de
5 la reine. J'ai le chien de mon oncle.

Exercise. 6.

6 Have you seen my aunt? My father has a good dog.
7 Have they seen the king? The queen has given a flower to
8 my mother. His brother has seen my uncle in the garden.
9 Has he also seen my aunt? Have you seen my rose? I have
10 a good brother. Have they given my dog to the queen? We
11 have a good father. My sister has the rose. You have given
12 my flower to the queen. Has he a good horse? My uncle
13 has a good dog. We have seen the man in the garden.
14 Her mother has a flower.

LESSON IV.

Plural of Nouns.

General rule. The plural is formed in French as in English, by the addition of a silent s to the singular.

Examples.

Le père,	Plur.	*les pères.*
l'ami,	„	*les amis.*
la tante,	„	*les tantes.*

Exceptions to this rule.

1) Nouns ending in *s*, *x* or *z* in the singular, admit of no variation in the plural, as:

le fils, the son.	Plur.	*les fils,* the sons.
la noix, the walnut.		*les noix,* the walnuts.
le nez, the nose.		*les nez,* the noses.

2) Words ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *ieu*, *œu* form their plurals by adding *x* instead of *s*, as:

le chapeau, the hat *or* bonnet.	Plur.	*les chapeaux.*
le feu, the fire.		*les feux.*
le lieu, the place.		*les lieux.*
le vœu, te wish.		*les vœux.*

3. The following seven nouns in *ou* also follow this rule, taking *x* in the plural:

le chou, (the) cabbage. *le pou,* the louse.
le bijou, the jewel. *le genou,* the knee.
le caillou, the pebble. *le joujou,* the plaything.
le hibou, the owl.

Plural; *les choux, les bijoux, les cailloux, etc.*

The others ending in *ou* follow the general rule and take s in the plural, as: *le clou*, the nail, plur. *les clous*; *le trou*, the hole, plur. *les trous*, etc.

4) Nouns ending in *al* and *ail*, change these terminations into *aux*, to form the plural, as:

le cheval, the horse.	Plur. *les chevaux*, the horses.
l'animal, the animal, beast.	*les animaux*, the beasts.
le travail, the work.	*les travaux*, the works.

NB. This rule however has a few exceptions, which follow the general rule, simply taking *s* in the plural, as: *le bal*, the ball; *le carnaval*, the carnival; *le portail*, the front-gate of a church; *le gouvernail*, the helm; *l'éventail*, the fan; *le détail*, the particulars; etc. Plur.: *les bals, les carnavals, etc.*

5) The following words form their plurals in an irregular manner:

**le ciel*, heaven.	Plur. *les cieux*, heavens.
**lœil*, the eye.	*les yeux*, the eyes.
**l'aïeul*, the great-grandfather.	*les aïeux*, the ancestors.
le bétail, cattle.	*les bestiaux*, the cattle.

le canif, the penknife.	*le jeu*, the play, game.
la porte, the door, gate.	*le bras*, the arm.
la maison, the house.	*le palais*, the castle.
le château, the castle.	*deux*, two; *trois*, three; *quatre*, four; *cinq*, five.
le chat, the cat.	

Sing. *j'avais*, I had.	Plur. *nous avions*, we had.
tu avais, thou hadst.	*vous aviez*, you „
il avait, he had.	*ils* } *avaient*, they had.
elle avait, she had.	*elles* }

Exercise. 7.

J'ai deux frères et quatre sœurs. Nous avions vu le palais et le château. Mon père avait cinq amis. Ils avaient vu mon fils. Avions-nous les bijoux de la reine? Ils avaient les chevaux. Le roi avait les joujoux. Mon oncle avait trois chapeaux. Avaient-ils vu la maison de la reine? Vous aviez deux chats. J'avais un bon canif. Tu avais deux noix. Ma mère avait vu le hibou.

Exercise. 8.

I had four apples. His father has given a flower to my sister. They had three friends. We had five horses and two

*) Those three words have also a regular plural with another signification; *les ciels* signifies the skies in pictures and the testers of a bed; *les œils de bœuf* mean ovals, and *les aïeuls* the great-grandfathers. See Appendix.

1 houses. You had seen the castles. We have four hats. Have
2 you seen the palace of the queen? She had the roses. We
3 have two arms. The sons of my aunt had three pebbles.
4 My aunt hat two cats and five dogs. We had his penknife.
5 Had they three sons? You have two uncles, and four aunts.

LESSON V.

Declension of Nouns.

1) In French, strictly speaking, there is no declension of nouns as in Latin and German, because the cases do not admit of various terminations. The term declension, therefore, is to be taken in its wider sense, as simply implying the variation of the cases by prefixing certain prepositions together with the article to the noun. By these cases, the different relations which nouns bear to one another are expressed. There are four cases:

the Nominative, *le nominatif.*
the Genitive *or* Possessive, *le génitif.*
the Dative, *le datif.*
the Accusative *or* Objective case, *l'accusatif.*

2) The nominative and objective cases have exactly the same form, both in singular and plural, as: *le père, un père, la mère, une mère, les pères, les mères etc.*, and can only be distinguished by their position in the sentence. In order to find the nominative, we must ask »who«; for the objective »whom« or »what«. Ex.:

La mère aime la fille, the mother loves the daughter.

Who loves the daughter? The answer is: *the mother. La mère* then is the nominative case or the subject. Whom or what does the mother love? Answer: the daughter. Consequently *la fille* is the accusative or the object. We see, in the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, the accusative follows it. If we change that sentence into: *La fille aime la mère*, then *la fille* is, according to its position, the nominative, and *la mère* the objective case, or accusative.

3) The genitive or possessive case replies to the question »whose«? »of whom« or »of which«? It is known by the preposition *de* (of) which appears either unchanged or contracted with the article. A contraction

takes place whenevor *de* occurs before the article *le* or *les*; in the first case, it takes the form *du* (singular), in the second *des* (plural). Ex.:

S. *du roi* (instead of *de le roi*), of the king *or* the king's.
du père (inst. of *de le père*), of the father, the father's.
Pl. *des rois* (inst. of *de les rois*), of the kings, the kings'.
des mères (inst. of *de les mères*), of the mothers.

4. Before *la* and *l'* and before possessive adjectives as: *mon*, *ma*, etc. *de* remains unaltered, as:

de la mère, of the mother *or* the mother's.
de la chambre, of the room.
de l'ami, of the friend, the friend's.
de l'homme, of (the) man, the man's.
de mon ami, of my friend.
de ma mère, of my mother.

5. Before the indefinite article *un*, *une*, an apostrophy is put instead of the *e* of *de*, as:

d'un roi, of a king.	*d'une reine*, of a queen.
d'un ami, of a friend.	*d'une amie*, of a female friend.

6. The dative case answers to the question »to whom«? and is formed by putting the preposition *à* before the article, as:

à un roi, to a king.	*à l'homme*, to the man.
à une reine, to a queen.	*à l'ami*, to the friend.

7) Before *le*, *à* is contracted with this article to *au*, and in the plural *à* and *les* into *aux*, as:

au roi, to the king.	*aux rois*, to the kings.
au frère, to the brother.	*aux frères*, to the brothers.

Table of Declension.

1) With the definite Article.

	Fem.	*Masc.*
N. A.	*la mère*, the mother.	*le père*, the father.
G.	*de la mère*, of the mother.	*du père*, of the father.
D.	*à la mère*, to the mother.	*au père*, to the father.
	Plural.	
N. A.	*les mères*, the mothers.	*les pères*, the fathers.
G.	*des mères*, of the mothers.	*des pères*, of the fathers.
D.	*aux mères*, to te mothers.	*aux pères*, to the fathers.

N. A.	*l'âme*, the soul.	*l'ami*, the friend.
G.	*de l'âme*, of the soul.	*de l'ami*, of the friend.
D.	*à l'âme*, to the soul.	*à l'ami*, to the friend.

Plural.

N. A.	*les⁀âmes*, the souls.	*les⁀amis*, the friends.
G.	*des⁀âmes*, of the souls.	*des⁀amis*, of the friends.
D.	*aux⁀âmes*, to the souls.	*aux⁀amis*, to the friends.

---

6) With the indefinite Article.

	Masc.	*Fem.*
N. A.	*un jardin*, a garden.	*une rose*, a rose.
G.	*d'un jardin*, of a garden.	*d'une rose*, of a rose.
D.	*à un jardin*, to a garden.	*à une rose*, to a rose.

Remark.

We think it proper to insert here the three following syntactical rules as indispensable for correct translation:

1. The definite article must be used, in French, before all nouns used in a general sense, or denoting a whole species of objects, though in English the article is not employed, as:

man, *l'homme.*	nature, *la nature.*
life, *la vie.*	summer, *l'été.*
fortune, *la fortune.*	dinner, *le dîner.*

Hence the genitives: of man, of life, of fortune etc. are to be translated in French: *de l'homme, de la vie, de la fortune etc.;* the datives: to man, to life, to nature etc. = *à l'homme, à la vie, à la nature.*

2. In French, the article is to be repeated before each substantive of a sentence, as:

the salt, pepper and vinegar = *le sel, le poivre et le vinaigre.*

the men, women and children = *les⁀hommes, les femmes et les⁀enfants.*

3. The possessor must, in French, follow the object possessed, and be preceded by the article; for example: the king's throne must be inverted as if it were: the throne of the king, and translated: *le trône du roi.* Thus:

the brother's coat = *l'habit du frère.*
the princes' sisters = *les sœurs des princes.*
the queen's apartments = *les⁀appartements de la reine.*
the friend's name = *le nom de l'ami.*

Exercise. 9.

La porte du palais. Aux rois. De l'oncle. De mon ami. 1
Avez-vous les chiens du roi? Tu as vu le jardin de son 2
père. Il avait donné deux noix à l'homme. Le cheval de 3
mon frère. La maison du roi a un jardin. J'ai donné la 4
rose au frère de la reine. L'ami de son oncle a deux chevaux 5
et trois chiens. Avait-il un palais? Son frère avait trois 6
châteaux. Le père a donné deux fleurs aux hommes. 7

Exercise. 10.

You had given two roses to the king. He had seen my 8
brother in the garden of the king. My father's friend has 9
three castles. We have two houses and one garden. The 10
king's son has a good dog. Have you seen my mother? I 11
had given my playthings to my uncle's friend. The king's 12
brother had five palaces. My mother's aunt has a garden. 13

LESSON VI.

Sing. *Je suis*, I am.	Plur. *nous sommes*, we are.
tu es, thou art.	*vous êtes*, you are.
il est, he is.	*ils* / *elles* } *sont*, they are.
elle est, she is.	

L'enfant, te child.	*grand*, large, great, tall.
l'oiseau (masc.), the bird.	*ici*, here; *heureux*, happy.
la fille, the daughter, girl.	*l'eau* (fem.), the water.
la ville, te town.	*la chambre*, the room.
le monde, the world.	*où?* where? *non*, no; *oui*, yes.

Exercise. 11.

Où est mon père? Est-il dans la chambre? Non, il est 14
dans le jardin de son ami. Le cheval est-il bon? Mon frère 15
a deux oiseaux. La fille de ma tante a une fleur. Où 16
avez-vous vu l'ami du roi? Nous avons vu la mère des 17
enfants. Le cheval est un bon animal. Ils sont dans la 18
ville. Tu as l'eau. J'ai donné mon chien à la fille de mon 19
ami. Ton chat est dans ma chambre. Ont-ils un ami? Oui, 20
ils ont quatre amis. L'ami de ton père a un grand cheval. 21

Exercise. 12.

I am tall. My uncle's friend is in his garden. The 22
queen's daughter had two roses. Where are my father and 23
mother? Have they a dog? Yes, they have three dogs. The 24
king's daughter has a rose. We are in the garden. The 25
man's brother is tall. Where is my uncle's dog? I have 26
two sons and three daughters. They are here. We are 27
happy. Are you happy? The world is large. 28

LESSON VII.

Partitive use of the Article.

1. This form is used to denote *a part of a totality*; but without specifying precisely *how much or how many*. It answers to the English *some* or *any* before a noun, and is expressed in French by ***du*** before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant, by ***de la*** before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant, and by ***de l'*** before a noun of either gender beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. Ex.:

du pain, some (*or* any) bread.	*de la bière*, some beer.
du vin, some (*or* any) wine.	*de la viande*, some meat.
de l'argent, some money (silver).	*de l'huile*, some oil.

In the plural, the partitive article is ***des*** for both genders, as:

des livres, (some) books.	*des fleurs*, flowers.
des enfants, children.	*des roses*, roses.

Note. *Some* is not always used in English, whereas *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, must always be added to the noun.

2. In questions, the English use any instead of some; in French it must be rendered by the same article; as:

Have you any bread? *avez-vous du pain?*
Is there any water? *y a-t-il de l'eau?*

3. The partitive article must be used whenever in English some or any is expressed or understood before a substantive; it must be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, as:

Have you bread and cheese?
Avez-vous du pain et du fromage?

Bring me some mustard, oil and vinegar.
Apportez-moi de la moutarde, de l'huile et du vinaigre.

4. However, when the substantive is preceded by an adjective, the simple preposition *de* or *d'* takes the place of the partitive article, in the singular as well as in the plural, as:

Singular.

N., A. & G.	*de bon vin*, some *or* any good wine.
	de bonne viande, some *or* any good meat.
	de mauvais café, some *or* any bad coffee.
	d'excellente bière, some *or* any excellent beer.

Plural.

N., A. & G.	*de bons livres,* some *or* any good books.
	de belles fleurs, some *or* any beautiful flowers.
	d'excellents vaisseaux, some *or* any excellent vessels.

Exercise. 13.

Avez-vous de bons livres? Nous avons de bonne viande. 1
A-t-il du pain? J'ai des fleurs. Mon ami a de la bière. 2
J'ai de l'argent. Avez-vous des fleurs? Où est mon père? 3
A-t-elle de l'encre? Son père a de bon fromage? L'enfant a 4
de bonnes noix. 5

Exercise. 14.

We have some good cheese. Have you any books? Yes, 6
I have four books. My father's friend has some good bread. 7
Had they any beer? Bring me some bread and cheese. They 8
have some beautiful roses in the garden. Has he any money? 9
Yes, he has money and friends. The bread is good. They 10
had dogs and cats. She has some good wine and beer. 11
Where is my dog? It is in the garden. 12.

LESSON VIII.

Declension of the partitive Article.

The partitive article, too, is capable of declension, that is, it has a peculiar form for the genitive and dative.

1. The genitive consists of the noun alone, to which the preposition **de** (**d'**) is prefixed, as: *de viande,* of meat; *d'argent,* of money; *de livres,* of books.

2) The dative is formed by the addition of **à** before the nominative, but it is seldom used, as: *à du pain,* to bread; *à de l'argent,* to money; *à des livres,* to books. Ex.:

Tu penses toujours à *du vin et* à *de la bière.*
You always think of wine and beer.

Table of Declension.

	Masc. Singular.	*Fem.*
N. A.	*du pain,* (some) bread.	*de la viande,* (some) meat.
G.	*de pain,* of bread.	*de viande,* of meat.
D.	*à du pain,* to (some) bread.	*à de la viande,* to (some) meat.
	Thus: *du beurre,* some butter.	Thus: *de la farine,* some flour.
	du vin, some wine.	*de la bière,* some beer.

Masculine and feminine.

N. A.	*de l'argent*, (some) money.	*de l'encre*, (some) ink.
G.	*d'argent*, of money.	*d'encre*, of ink.
D.	*à de l'argent*, to money.	*à de l'encre*, to ink.
	Thus: *de l'or*, some gold.	Thus: *de l'eau*, some water.

Plural.

(The plural is the same for both genders.)

N. A.	*des livres*, (some) books.	*des plumes*, (some) pens.
G.	*de livres*, of books.	*de plumes*, of pens.
D.	*à des livres*, to (some) books.	*à des plumes*, to (some) pens.
	Thus: *des pays*, (some) countries.	Thus: *des pierres*, (some) stones.

3. As it appears from the foregoing table, the genitive case of the partitive article in all the genders and numbers is simply the word *de*. This form (*de* alone) is used without any distinction of gender or number:

a) as in English, after nouns expressing measure, weight, number, as:

une bouteille de vin, a bottle of wine.
un morceau de pain, a piece of bread.
une livre de sucre, a pound of sugar.
une paire de bas, a pair of stockings.

b) after the following adverbs of quantity:

assez, enough.	*moins*, less. *rien*, nothing.
beaucoup, much, many, a great many, a great deal.	*quelque chose*, something.
combien, how much, how many.	*trop*, too, too much, to many.
peu, little, few.	*trop peu*, too little, too few.
plus, more.	*tant*, so much, so many.
	autant, as much, as many.

Examples.

Assez de vin, wine enough (*assez* before the noun).
Combien d'argent, how much money?
Tant de fleurs, so many flowers.
Trop de fautes, too many mistakes.

c) After adverbs of negation, as: *pas*, *point*. Ex.:

Je n'ai pas de sucre, I have no sugar.
N'avez-vous point d'encre? have you no ink?

d) The *partitive* genitive *de* or *d'* in French is also used in the place of adjectives denoting a material, as:

une bague d'or, a gold ring.
une cuiller d'argent, a silver spoon.
une bourse de soie, a silk purse.

un chapeau de velours, a velvet bonnet.
une table de bois, a wooden table.

Note. After numerals no article at all is used, as:
Deux enfants, two children. | *Dix écoliers,* ten pupils.

Exercise. 15.

Il a assez de pain. Apportez-moi une bouteille de bière. 1
Mon frère a beaucoup de fleurs. Combien d'enfants avez- 2
vous? L'ami de l'homme avait de bon vin. J'ai une bague 3
d'argent. Ton oncle a peu d'amis. A-t-elle beaucoup d'argent? 4
Combien de fleurs avez-vous dans le jardin? Son père avait 5
trop d'amis. Ma sœur a un chapeau de velours. La reine 6
avait beaucoup de bijoux. Ton ami a une belle table de bois. Il 7
a une bourse de soie. Le roi avait une bague d'or. Ils ont 8
cinq livres de sucre. L'enfant a deux paires de bas. Tu as 9
un morceau de fromage. Les hommes avaient tant de cuillers 10
d'argent. 11

Exercise. 16.

We have some good bread. His father had many friends. 12
My friend has five pupils. The king has many good horses 13
and dogs. How much money have you? They had few friends. 14
Has he any flowers? Yes, he has many flowers in his garden. 15
I have two pounds of sugar. My sister has a beautiful silk 16
purse. They had a bottle of wine. The king's friends have 17
many palaces. Bring me four pens. I have some good ink. 18
Have they money enough? His brother has a silver ring. 19
She has few books. The man had too many friends. Her 20
aunt has a silk bonnet. Had you any money? We had 21
money enough. My brother has ten pairs of stockings. 22

LESSON IX.

Proper Nouns.

A proper noun is the name of any particular person or place. A distinction must be made: 1) between names of *persons* and *towns;* 2) names of *countries, provinces, mountains, rivers, lakes.*

1) The former admit of no article; to form their genitive case, they take *de,* and for the dative *à.*

Table of declension.

N. A.	*Charles,* Charles.	*Marie,* Mary.
G.	*de Charles,* of *or* from Charles.	*de Marie,* of *or* from Mary.
D.	*à Charles,* to Charles.	*à Marie,* to Mary.

N. A.	*Paris*, Paris.	*Londres*, London.
G.	*de Paris*, of *or* from Paris.	*de Londres*, of *or* from L.
D.	*à Paris*, to, at *or* in Paris.	*à Londres*, to *or* at London.

1) Christian names.

Frédéric, Frederick.	*François*, Frank.
Guillaume, William.	*Élise*, Eliza, Lizzy.
Henri, Henry.	*Hélène*, Helen, Ellen.
George, George.	*Sophie*, Sophia.
Robert, Robert.	*Caroline*, Caroline.
Jean, John.	*Louise*, Louisa.
Jules, Julius.	*Jeannette*, Jane.

2) Names of towns.

Vienne, Vienna.	*Bruxelles*, Brussels.
Genève, Geneva.	*Florence*, Florence.
Lyon, Lyons.	*Berlin*, Berlin.
Rome, Rome.	*Francfort*, Frankfort.
Naples, Naples.	*New-York*, New-York.

Remarks.

1) We must except from the above rule: *a*) the names of several Italian authors before which the article is used: *le Tasse*, Tasso (gen. *du Tasse* etc.); *l'Arioste*, Ariosto; *le Dante*, Dante; *b*) titles of books or plays, as: *le Télémaque de Fénélon, l'Athalie de Racine* etc.; *c*) some names of towns, as: *le Havre*, Havre; *le Caire*, Cairo; *la Mecque*, Mekka.

2) In English the genitive is often put first. This transposition of words is not allowed in French, for ex.: 'Henry's hat' must be translated as if it were: the hat of Henry = *le chapeau de Henri;* Byron's works = *les œuvres de Byron.*

2) Proper names of countries, provinces, rivers and mountains, have the definite article in French, as:

la France, France.	*la Hollande*, Holland.
la Belgique, Belgium.	*l'Autriche*, Austria.
l'Angleterre, England.	*l'Europe*, Europe.
l'Écosse, Scotland.	*l'Asie*, Asia.
la Russie, Russia.	*l'Amérique*, America.
l'Italie, Italy.	
la Suisse, Switzerland.	*la Seine*, the Seine.
l'Allemagne, Germany.	*la Thamise*, the Thames.
l'Espagne, Spain.	*le Rhin*, the Rhine.
la Suède, Sweden.	*les Alpes*, the Alps, etc.

These are declined as common names:

Gen. *de la France*, of France.
Dat. *à la France*, to France.

Remarks.

1) Nevertheless, the names of countries and provinces take no article, when they are preceded by the preposition *en*, which corresponds to both to and in. Ex.:

Je vais en Italie, I am going to Italy.
Il demeure en Allemagne, he lives in Germany.

2) To and at or in, before names of cities, towns and villages, are rendered by *à*. Ex.:

Je vais à Londres, — à Paris, — à Bade etc.
I go to London, — to Paris, — to Baden etc.
Mon oncle demeure à Berlin, — à Lyon etc.
My uncle lives in (at) Berlin, — in (at) Lyons etc.

Le gant, the glove.	*la poche*, the pocket.
la poire, the pear.	*le maître*, the master.
la plume, the pen.	*la table*, the table.
mangé, eaten.	*sur*, on, upon.
reçu, received.	*demeure*, lives.
donnez, give.	*lu*, read; *été*, been.
Monsieur, Mr., Sir.	*à qui est?* to whom belongs?
Madame, Madam, Mrs.	*connaît*, knows.
Mademoiselle, Miss.	*trouvé* found.

Exercise. 17.

J'ai deux paires de gants. Donnez la plume à l'enfant. 1
Mon oncle demeure à Paris. Avez-vous lu les œuvres de 2
Byron? J'avais la plume de Guillaume. Il a vu Henri à 3
Rome. Ils ont vu les chevaux de Monsieur Smith. Où est 4
Mademoiselle Louise? Elle est dans sa chambre. Son ami a 5
été en Italie. Nous sommes à Vienne. Le maître a donné 6
deux livres *(books)* à Jean. Madame Johnson connaît la sœur 7
de la reine. L'Allemagne est un grand pays. J'ai beaucoup 8
d'argent dans ma poche. Je vais en France. Monsieur Brown 9
a trouvé mon livre sur la table. Donnez-moi deux poires. 10
Nous avons vu le château du roi de Belgique. 11

Exercise. 18.

Where is my uncle's book? To whom belongs this palace? 12
Mr. Smith lives in Germany. Have they been to Brussels? 13
He has read the works of Racine. I am going to Berlin. 14
Miss Jones has many friends in Frankfort. They had been 15
in America. Her aunt was in France. We have eaten some 16
good apples. Has he seen Mr. Williams? George is my friend. 17
We have seen Spain and Italy. Have you been to Geneva? 18
Frederick and Henry have eaten many apples and pears. 19
Where is my father? He is in Lyons. Have you seen the 20
king of Spain?

LESSON X.

Auxiliary Verbs.

Avoir, to have.

Indicative Mood. *(Indicatif.)*

Present Tense. *(Présent).*

J'ai, I have.	Pl. *nous‿avons,* we have.
tu as, thou hast.	*vous‿avez,* you have.
il a, he as *or* it has.	*ils‿ont,* } they have.
elle a, she has.	*elles‿ont,* }
on a, one has.	

Imperfect. *(Imparfait.)*

J'avais, I had.	*nous‿avions,* we had.
tu avais, thou hadst.	*vous‿aviez,* you had.
il avait, he had.	*ils‿avaient,* } they had.
elle avait, she had.	*elles‿avaient,* }

Preterite. *(Défini.)*

*J'eus,**) I had.	*nous‿eûmes,* we had.
tu eus, thou hadst.	*vous‿eûtes,* you had.
il eut, he had.	*ils‿eurent,* they had.

Future. *(Futur.)*

J'aurai, I shall *or* will have.	*nous‿aurons,* we shall have.
tu auras, thou wilt have.	*vous‿aurez,* you will have.
il aura, he will have.	*ils‿auront,* they will have.

1st Conditional. *(Cond. Pésent.)*

J'aurais, I should have.	*nous‿aurions,* we should h.
tu aurais, thou wouldst have.	*vouz‿auriez,* you would have.
il aurait, he would have.	*ils‿auraient,* they would h.

Compound Tenses.

Eu, had.

Perfect. *(Passé indéfini.)*

J'ai eu, I have had.	*nous‿avons‿eu,* we have had.
tu as‿eu, thou hast had.	*vous‿avez‿eu,* you have had.
il a eu, he has had.	*ils‿ont‿eu,* } they have h.
elle a eu, she has had.	*elles‿ont‿eu,* }

Pluperfect. *(Plusqueparfait.)*

J'avais‿eu, I had had.	*nous‿avions‿eu,* we had had.
tu as‿eu, thou hadst had.	*vous‿aviez‿eu,* you had had.
il avait‿eu, he had had.	*ils‿avaient‿eu,* they had had.

---

*) Pronounce as if it were: *j'ue,* tu *ues* etc.

2nd Pluperfect. *(Passé antérieur.)*

J'eus⁀eu, I had had.
tu eus⁀eu, thou hadst had.
il eut⁀eu, he had had.
nous⁀eûmes⁀eu, we had had.
vous⁀eûtes⁀eu, you had had.
ils⁀eurent⁀eu, they had had.

2nd Future. *(Futur antérieur passé.)*

J'aurai eu, I shall have had.
tu auras⁀eu, thou wilt have had.
il aura eu, he will have had.
nous⁀aurons⁀eu, we shall have had.
vous⁀aurez⁀eu, you will have had.
ils⁀auront⁀eu, they will have had.

2nd Conditional. *(Cond. Passé.)*

J'aurais⁀eu, I should have had.
tu aurais⁀eu, thou wouldst have had.
il aurait⁀eu, he would have had.
nous⁀aurions⁀eu, we should have had.
vous⁀auriez⁀eu, you would have had.
ils⁀auraient⁀eu, they would have had.

Imperative Mood. *(Impératif.)*

Aie, have.
(*qu'il ait*, let him have.)
ayons, let us have.
ayez, have (you).

Subjunctive Mood*). *(Subjonctif.)*

Present.

Que j'aie, that I (may) have.
que tu aies, that thou have.
qu'il ait, that he have.
que nous ayons, that we may have.
que vous ayez, that you have.
qu'ils aient, that they have.

Imperfect.

Que j'eusse, that I had *or* might have.
que tu eusses, that thou hadst.
qu'il eût, that he had *or* might have.
que nous eussions, that we had *or* might have.
que vous eussiez, that you had.
qu'ils eussent, that they had *or* might have.

Perfect. *(Passé.)*

Que j'aie eu, that I (may) have had.
que tu aies⁀eu, that thou (mayest) have had.
qu'il ait⁀eu, that he (may) have had.
que nous⁀ayons⁀eu, that we (may) have had.
que vous⁀ayez⁀eu, that you (may) have had.
qu'ils⁀aient⁀eu, that they (may) have had.

*) The Subjunctive Mood may be learnt later.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse eu, that I (might) have had.
que tu eusses‿eu, that thou (mightst) have had.
qu'il eût‿eu, that he (might) have had.
que nous‿eussions‿eu, that we (might) have had.
que vous‿eussiez‿eu, that you (might) have had.
qu'ils‿eussent‿eu, that they (might) have had.

Infinitive Mood. *(Infinitif.)*

Present.		Past.	
Avoir, *d'avoir,* *à avoir,*	to have.	*Avoir eu,* *d'avoir eu,* *à avoir eu,*	to have had.

Participles. *(Participes.)*

Present.	Past.
Ayant, having.	*eu, f. eue,* had.
	ayant‿eu, having had.

Note 1. Avoir also means: to receive, to get, especially in the Future, as:

J'aurai de l'argent, I shall get some money.

Note 2. It would be a good plan to conjugate the whole verb *avoir* together with a noun, as: *j'ai une pomme, j'avais une pomme, etc.* — After that, with the pronouns *l' (le),* it, and *les,* them, as: *je l'ai,* I have it; *tu l'as, il l'a, etc.;* — *je les‿aurai, tu les‿auras, etc.*

Perdu, lost.	*de,* of, from.
le chapeau, the hat.	*hier,* yesterday.
vendu, sold.	*aujourd'hui,* to-day.

Exercise. 19.

1 Nous avons perdu beaucoup d'argent. J'avais un bon
2 ami en Italie. Tu auras un chapeau. J'ai vu ton oncle hier.
3 Ils ont vendu les chevaux. Les enfants auront de bon fromage.
4 Le fils du roi avait un bague d'or. Combien de chapeaux
5 avez-vous vendus? Elle aura une rose aujourd'hui. J'ai reçu
6 un chien du roi d'Espagne. Il aura une belle fleur. Où avez-
7 vous vu la reine? Nous avons vu la reine dans le palais.
8 Mes fils ont assez de pain. Tu as eu un bon ami. L'homme
9 avait eu une bouteille de vin. Elle aura un chapeau de soie.
10 Le frère du roi a vendu son palais. Nous avons été à Paris.
11 Le père avait donné deux plumes aux enfants de son ami.

A.6.203

Exercise. 20.

12 They had many friends in England. You have a pair
13 of stockings and three hats. Mr. Smith has been to London.

I have had some pears. She will have many flowers. We have five pens and two books. Give me a bottle of wine. You have had wine enough to-day. They will have friends. She has been in France. My uncle will have had money enough. He will have been happy. You have had my penknife. They have seen the flowers in the garden. We have had four apples and three pears. Where have you seen my friend? To whom have they given my horse? Henry's aunt lives in London. Charles' dog is lost. I have had many books.

LESSON XI.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary.

Être, to be.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je suis, I am.
tu es, thou art.
il est, he (it) is.
elle est, she is.
nous sommes, we are.
vous êtes, you are.
ils / *elles* *sont,* they are.

Imperfect.

J'étais, I was.
tu étais, thou wast.
il était, he (it) was.
elle était, she was.
nous étions, we were.
vous étiez, you were.
ils étaient, / *elles étaient,* they were.

Preterite.

Je fus, I was.
tu fus, thou wast.
il fut, he was.
nous fûmes, we were.
vous fûtes, you were.
ils furent, they were.

Future.

Je serai, I shall be.
tu seras, thou wilt be.
il sera, he (it) will be.
nous serons, we shall be.
vous serez, you will be.
ils seront, they will be.

1st Conditional.

Je serais, I should be.
tu serais, thou wouldst be.
il serait, he (it) would be.
nous serions, we should be.
vous seriez, you would be.
ils seraient, they would be.

Compound Tenses.

Été, been.

Perfect.

J'ai été, I have been.
tu as été, thou hast been.
il a été, he has been.
elle a été, has been.
nous avons été, we have been.
vous avez été, you have been.
ils ont été, / *elles ont été,* they have been.

Pluperfect.

J'avais‿été, I had been.
tu avais‿été, thou hadst been.
il avait‿été, he had been.
nous avions‿été, we had been.
vous aviez‿été, you had been.
ils avaient‿été, they had been.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus‿été, I had been.
tu eus‿été, thou hadst been.
il eut‿été, he had been.
nous eûmes‿été, we had been.
vous eûtes‿été, you had been.
ils eurent‿été, they had been.

2nd Future.

J'aurai été, I shall have been.
tu auras‿été, thou wilt have been.
il aura été, he will have been.
nous aurons été, we shall have been.
vous aurez été, you will have been.
ils auront été, they will have been.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais‿été, I should *or* would have been.
tu aurais été, thou wouldst have been.
il aurait été, the would have been.
nous aurions été, we should have been.
vous auriez été, you would have been.
ils auraient‿été, they would have been.

Imperative Mood.

Sois, be.
qu'il soit, let him be.
soyons, let us be.
soyez, be.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je sois, that I (may) be.
que tu sois, that thou be.
qu'il soit, that he be.
que nous soyons, that we be.
que vous soyez, that you be.
qu'ils soient, that they be.

Imperfect.

Que je fusse, that I were.
que tu fusses, that thou werest.
qu'il fût, that he were.
que nous fussions, that we were
que vous fussiez, that you were.
qu'ils fussent, that they were.

Perfect.

Que j'aie été, that I (may) have been.
que tu aies été, that thou (mayest) have been.
qu'il ait été, that he (may) have been.
que nous ayons été, that we (may) have been.
que vous ayez été, that you (may) have been.
qu'ils aient été, that they (may) have been.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse été, that I (might) have been.
que tu eusses été, that thou (mightst) have been.
qu'il eût été, that he (might) have been.
que nous eussions été, that we (might) have been.
que vous eussiez été, that you (might) have been.
qu'ils eussent été, that they (might) have been.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	Past.
Être, to be.	*Avoir été,* to have been.
d'être, of being, to be.	*d'avoir été,* of having been.
à être, to be.	*à avoir été,* to have been.

Participles.

Present.	Past.
Étant, being.	*Été,* been.
	ayant été, having been.

ce, f. *cette,* this.	*malade* (pl. *-s*), ill.
très, very.	*utile* (pl. *-s*), useful.
jeune (pl. *-s*), young.	*petit* (pl. *-s*), small.
demain, to-morrow.	*ici,* here.
fils, son.	*fille,* daughter, girl.

Exercise. 21.

Je suis jeune. Les amis de mon oncle sont malades. 1
Nous serons à Berlin demain. Mon père et ma mère sont 2
ici. Où est Jean? Nous étions malades. Ce jardin est très 3
petit. Êtes-vous heureux? Oui, nous sommes très heureux. 4
J'étais dans le jardin de ton frère. Les chevaux sont utiles. 5
Cette fille était malade. J'ai été à Rome. Le fils de ma 6
tante sera ici aujourd'hui. Mon frère serait heureux, si *(if)* 7
son ami était ici. Tu seras malade. L'oncle de cette fille a 8
été en France. Où étiez-vous hier? Nous sommes heureux 9
par ce que *(because)* vous aurez beaucoup de joujoux. 10

Exercise. 22.

His father will be here to-morrow. Where were you 11
yesterday? The king's son is ill. Louisa is very young. 12
John is my friend. They were ill. They would be happy. 13
We shall be in Paris to-morrow. Your *(votre)* brother was 14
here yesterday. He has given some flowers to my sister. 15
You would be very happy. The king's brother was in the 16
palace. Have they been in my room? The bread and cheese 17
were on the table. Where is her sister? The dogs were 18
useful to the queen's friend. I am happy. We were young. 19
His son is small. They will have had money enough. 20

LESSON XII.

The negative and interrogative forms of the Auxiliaries.

Whereas in English the *negation* is simply expressed by the particle not, the French make it of two negative words, viz. *ne* and *pas*, the first of which is placed before the simple verb, the other after it, as: *je ne suis pas*, I am not. — In compound tenses, the participle follows *pas*, as: *je n'ai pas eu*, I have not had.

In interrogations, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb, is placed after it, and they are joined by a hyphen, as: *as-tu? avez-vous?* — When the third person singular ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb and *il, elle* or *on: a-t-il? a-t-elle? aura-t-on?*

Table.

1) Negative form of the auxiliaries.

Indicative Mood.

Avoir, to have.	*Être,* to be.
Present Tense.	
Je n'ai pas, I have not.	*Je ne suis pas,* I am not.
tu n'as pas, thou hast not.	*tu n'es pas,* thou art not.
il n'a pas, he has not.	*il n'est pas,* he *or* it is not.
elle n'a pas, she has not.	*elle n'est pas,* she is not.
nous n'avons pas, we have not.	*nous ne sommes pas,* we are not.
vous n'avez pas, you have not.	*vous n'êtes pas,* you are not.
ils n'ont pas, they have not.	*ils ne sont pas,* they are not.
Imperfect.	
Je n'avais pas, I had not, etc.	*Je n'étais pas,* I was not, etc.
Preterite.	
Je n'eus pas, I had not, etc.	*Je ne fus pas,* I was not, etc.
Future.	
Je n'aurai pas, I shall not have, etc.	*Je ne serai pas,* I shall not be, etc.
1st Conditional.	
Je n'aurais pas, I should not have, etc.	*Je ne serais pas,* I should not be, etc.

Compound tenses.

Perfect.	
Je n'ai pas eu, I have not had, etc.	*Je n'ai pas été,* I have not been, etc.

Pluperfect.

Je n'avais pas eu, I had not had etc.	*Je n'avais pas été*, I had not been etc.

2nd Future.

Je n'aurai pas eu, I shall not have had etc.	*Je n'aurai pas été*, I shall not have been etc.

2nd Conditional.

Je n'aurais pas eu, I should not have had etc.	*Je n'aurais pas été*, I should not have been etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je n'aie pas, that I (may) not have etc.	*Que je ne sois pas*, that I (may) not be etc.

Preterite.

Que je n'eusse pas, that I might not have etc.	*Que je ne fusse pas*, that I were not etc.

Perfect.

Que je n'aie pas eu, that I (may) not have had etc.	*Que je n'aie pas été*, that I (may) not have been etc.

Pluperfect.

Que je n'eusse pas eu, that I (might) not have had etc.	*Que je n'eusse pas été*, that I (might) not have been etc.

Imperative Mood.

N'aie pas, have not.	*Ne sois pas*, be not, do not be.
n'ayons pas, let us not have.	*ne soyons pas*, let us not be.
n'ayez pas, have not.	*ne soyez pas*, be not.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.

N'avoir pas, / *ne pas avoir* } not to have.	*N'être pas*, / *ne pas être*, } not to be.

Perfect.

N'avoir pas eu, not to have had.	*N'avoir pas été*, not to have been.

Participles.

Present.

N'ayant pas, not having.	*N'étant pas*, not being.

Past.

N'ayant pas eu, not having had.	*N'ayant pas été*, not having been.

---

2) Interrogative form of the two Auxiliaries.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Ai-je, have I?	*Suis-je*, am I?
as-tu, hast thou?	*es-tu*, art thou?
a-t-il, has he?	*est-il*, is he?
a-t-elle, has she?	*est-elle*, is she?
avons-nous, have we?	*sommes-nous*, are we?
avez-vous, have you?	*êtes-vous*, are you?
ont-ils, *ont-elles*, have they?	*sont-ils*, *sont-elles*, are they?

Imperfect.

Avais-je, had I? etc.	*Étais-je*, was I? etc.

Preterite.

Eus-je, had I? etc.	*Fus-je*, was I? etc.

Future.

Aurai-je, shall I have? etc.	*Serai-je*, shall I be? etc.

1st Conditional.

Aurais-je, should I have? etc.	*Serais-je*, should I be? etc.

Perfect.

Ai-je eu, have I had? etc.	*Ai-je été*, have I been? etc.

Pluperfect.

Avais-je eu, had I had? etc.	*Avais-je été*, had I been? etc.

2nd Future.

Aurai-je eu, shall I have had?	*Aurai-je été*, shall I have been?

2nd Conditional.

Aurais-je eu, should I have had?	*Aurais-je été*, should I have been? etc.

---

3) Negative and interrogative form.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

N'ai-je pas, have I not?	*Ne suis-je pas*, am I not?
n'as-tu pas, hast thou not?	*n'es-tu pas*, art thou not?
n'a-t-il pas, has he not?	*n'est-il pas*, is he not?
n'avons-nous pas, have we not?	*ne sommes-nous pas*, are we not?
n'avez-vous pas, have you not?	*n'êtes-vous pas*, are you not?
n'ont-ils pas, have they not?	*ne sont-ils pas*, are they not?

Imperfect.

N'avais-je pas, had I not? etc.	*N'étais-je pas*, was I not? etc.

Preterite.

N'eus-je pas, had I not? etc. | *Ne fus-je pas*, was I not? etc.

1st Future.

N'aurai-je pas, shall I not have? etc. | *Ne serai-je pas*, shall I not be? etc.

1st Condicional.

N'aurais-je pas, should I not have? etc. | *Ne serais-je pas*, should I not be? etc.

Compound Tenses.

Perfect.

N'ai-je pas eu, have I not had? etc. | *N'ai-je pas été*, have I not been? etc.

Pluperfect.

N'avais-je pas eu, had I not had? etc. | *N'avais-je pas été*, had I not been? etc.

2nd Future.

N'aurai-je pas eu, shall I not have had? etc. | *N'aurai-je pas été*, shall I not have been? etc.

2nd Conditional.

N'aurais-je pas eu, should I not have had? etc. | *N'aurais-je pas été*, should I not have been? etc.

La maison, the house.
le voisin, the neighbour.
la fenêtre, the window.
chez, at the house of.
le crayon, the pencil.
le garçon, the boy.
une douzaine, a dozen.
le verre, the glass.
le drap, the cloth.
la montre, the watch.
paresseux, idle.
content, contented.

Exercise. 23.

Il n'était pas chez mon père. Ce garçon n'a pas été 1
paresseux. Je ne suis pas jeune. Vous n'avez pas de pain. 2
Je n'ai pas eu un verre de vin. Aurez-vous une montre d'or? 3
Nous ne serons pas contents. Ont-ils de bon drap? Le petit 4
garçon a été malade. Avez-vous eu du fromage? Cette mai- 5
son a cinq fenêtres. Seront-ils ici demain? Nous n'avons 6
pas vu cette fille. Ils n'auront pas de bon drap. Son oncle 7
n'aura pas vendu les maisons. Vous n'étiez pas ici hier. 8
N'êtes-vous pas contents? Nous ne sommes pas contents. 9
Tu n'étais pas malade. Mon fils n'a pas été en Italie. Au- 10
ront-ils de bon pain? Ne seront-ils pas heureux? Elle ne 11
sera pas malade. Nous avons eu une douzaine de bouteilles de 12
vin. Aurai-je une montre d'argent? Nous n'avions pas 13
mangé de pain. N'a-t-elle pas eu deux livres de sucre? 14

Exercise. 24.

1 Have you not seen his dog? They were not ill. We
2 were not contented. Will they have money enough? Were
3 they here yesterday? I am not very happy. The boys
4 would not be idle. Will he be here to-morrow? Have they
5 not taken (*pris*) my pencil? My uncle was not in his gar-
6 den. You will not be happy. The king has not sold his
7 (*ses*) castles. Is he not my neighbour's son? Her daughter
8 is not ill. They have not seen his dog. Will they not have
9 two gold watches? We were not at the house of his friend.
10 Have you not seen the boy's pencil? We shall not be con-
11 tented. Has he not received many pears? How many apples
12 had you?

LESSON XIII.

Determinative Adjectives.

These words always take their place before a substantive and are declined with *de* and *à*. They are divided into four classes: demonstrative, interrogative, possessive and numeral adjectives.

1) Demonstrative Adjectives.

These are:

ce	fem.	*cette*, this;	plur.	*ces*, these.
ce — ci,	„	*cette — ci*, this (here);	„	*ces — ci*, these.
ce — là,	„	*cette — là*, that;	„	*ces — là*, those.
le même,	„	*la même*, the same;	„	*les mêmes*.

Examples.

Ce chapeau, this hat.
cette ville, this town.
ce garçon-ci, this boy (here).
cette femme-ci, this lady (here).
ces arbres-ci, these trees (here).
ces hommes, these men.
le même livre, the same book.
ce garçon-là, that boy.
cette femme-là, that lady.
ces arbres-là, those trees.

Declension.

G. *de ce chapeau*, of this hat. D. *à ce chapeau*, to this hat.

NB. Before a masculine noun which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, *cet* is used instead of *ce;* in the plural there is no difference. Ex.:

cet‿arbre, this tree (instead of *ce arbre*).
cet‿enfant, this *or* that child (instead of *ce enfant*).
Pl. *ces‿arbres*, these trees. *ces‿habits*, these coats.

2) Interrogatives Adjectives.

This is in the singular *quel*, fem. *quelle*; plur. *quels*, fem. *quelles*, which? what? Ex:

quel livre, which book? pl. *quels livres*, which *or* what [books?
quelle fleur, which *or* what flower?
quelle heure est-il? what o'clock is it?

It answers also to the exclamative *what a* —! Ex.:

quel beau tableau! what a beautiful picture!

La fable, the fable.	*riche* (pl. —s) rich.
la capitale, the capital.	*toujours*, always.
autrefois, formerly.	*le pays*, the country.
l'encrier (m,), the ink-stand.	*mais*, but.
le matin, the morning.	*le soir*, the evening.

Exercise. 25.

1 Ce garçon est très jeune. 2 Cet homme n'a pas d'enfants. 3 Quel livre avez-vous lu ce matin? 4 Je serai ici ce soir. 5 Vous n'êtes pas toujours contents. 6 Ce pays est très riche. 7 Nous avons lu ces fables. 8 Quelle femme avez-vous vue? 9 Nous avons vu son ami chez mon père. 10 Cette fille-là est malade. 11 Ces hommes-ci ont été à Rome. 12 Quel encrier avaient-ils? 13 Nous ne sommes pas riches. 14 Ce garçon-ci a perdu son crayon. 15 Aurez-vous le même livre? 16 Tu ne seras pas paresseux. 17 J'ai vu des arbres dans le jardin de son ami.

Exercise. 26.

1 Have you read Fontaine's fables? 2 This boy's father is ill. 3 That girl has lost her watch. 4 This man is not rich. 5 What book have you read? 6 I have not read these books. 7 Paris is the capital of France. 8 These men are idle. 9 Those girls are young. 10 Where have you been to-day? 11 These children have lost many pens. 12 We are not always happy. 13 These boys were here this morning. 14 Would they not be rich? 15 This girl's father is ill. 16 His uncle's friend has many trees in his garden. 17 That lady is ill. 18 John has lost his inkstand. 19 Will they have read these fables? 20 You were formerly very happy. 21 To whom does this dog belong? 22 These stockings are not good *(bons)*. 23 They are not rich, but they are happy. 24 Have you not seen this girl's pencil? 25 Which pen has he? 26 He has my pen.

LESSON XIV.

Possessive Adjectives.

These are called in some other grammars *conjunctive possessive pronouns*. They are:

mon,	fem.	*ma*,	plur.	*mes*,	my.
ton,	„	*ta*,	„	*tes*,	thy.
son,	„	*sa*,	„	*ses*,	his, her, its.
notre,	„	*notre*,	„	*nos*,	our.
votre,	„	*votre*,	„	*vos*,	your.
leur,	„	*leur*,	„	*leurs*,	their.

Examples.

Mon père, ta mère, ses frères, notre ami, vos livres, leurs parents.

Declension.

N. & A. mon père, — ta mère, — ses frères, etc.
Gen. de mon père, — de ta mère, — de ses frères, etc.
Dat. à mon père, — à ta sœur, — à leurs parents, etc.

Remarks.

1) The possessive adjectives are repeated in French before each substantive, and agree with it in gender and number:

mon frère et ma sœur, my brother and sister.

2) *Mon, ton, son* are used instead of *ma, ta, sa* before feminine words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, in order to avoid the hiatus which would result from the meeting of the two vowels. Ex.:

mon amie, my (female) friend. *mon âme*, my soul.

3) *Son, sa, ses* mean both his and her, and agree in both meanings with the following noun, as:

Le père aime son fils, the father loves his son.
La mère aime son fils, the mother loves her son.
La mère aime son fils et sa fille, the mother loves her son and her daughter.

4) In French *votre* is, from politeness, often preceded by the words: *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle;* plur. *Messieurs, Mesdames, Mesdemoiselles*, which are not expressed in English, as:

monsieur votre père, your father.
mademoiselle votre sœur, your sister.
messieurs vos frères, your brothers.

Exercise. 27.

1 Votre père et votre mère sont ici. 2 Leurs amis étaient malades. 3 Les enfants ont perdu leurs livres. 4 Ses frères ne sont pas riches. 5 Où sont mes bas? 6 Le père aime ses fils. 7 Avez-vous vu mes fleurs? 8 Je n'ai pas vu vos fleurs, mais j'ai vu vos livres. 9 Notre oncle est à Lyon. 10 Où est mon amie? 11 Elle est dans sa chambre. 12 Ces enfants ne sont pas heureux, leurs parents sont morts *(dead)*. 13 Notre oncle a vendu

sa maison. 1 Ton frère et ta sœur seront ici ce soir. 2 Nous avons reçu ces fleurs de notre tante. 3 J'aurai la montre d'or de ma sœur. 4 Nous ne sommes pas contents. 5 Il a donné un encrier à ma sœur. 6 Où est monsieur votre frère? 7 Nos amis ont reçu quatre bouteilles de vin.

Exercise. 28.

8 My brother and sister are here. 9 Where is your uncle? 10 He is in London. 11 Have you seen his pen? 12 Our friends will be here to-morrow. 13 We have sold our house. 14 His brother was rich. 15 Your neighbour will have many roses. 16 Their father and mother are in Paris. 17 My neighbour's child is ill. 18 These boys have lost their hats. 19 Our sisters have found their books. 20 I have not seen his uncle and aunt. 21 Your master has ten pupils. 22 These boys have lost their father. 23 Our uncle was here yesterday. 24 This father loves his children. 25 That man has lost his watch. 26 My friends are in Germany. 27 Our pupils are young. 28 His sister's child is ill. 29 We were in our neigbour's garden. 30 The king has given two horses to our father.

LESSON XV.

Numerals.

There are in French three kinds of numeral adjectives, viz. *cardinal*, *ordinal* and *indefinite numerals*.

1. Cardinal Numbers.

Un, *une*, one.	*vingt*, twenty.
deux, two.	*vingt et un*, twenty-one.
trois, three.	*vingt-deux*, twenty-two.
quatre, four.	*vingt-trois*, twenty-three.
cinq, five.	*vingt-quatre*, twenty-four.
six, six.	*vingt-cinq*, twenty-five etc.
sept, seven.	*trente*, thirty.
huit, eight.	*quarante*, forty.
neuf, nine.	*cinquante*, fifty.
dix, ten.	*soixante*, sixty.
onze, eleven.	*soixante-dix*, seventy.
douze, twelve.	*soixante-onze*, seventy-one.
treize, thirteen.	*soixante-douze*, seventy-two.
quatorze, fourteen.	*soixante-treize*, seventy-three.
quinze, fifteen.	*soixante-quatorze*, seventy-four.
seize, sixteen.	*soixante-quinze*, seventy-five.
dix-sept, seventeen.	*soixante-seize*, seventy-six.
dix-huit, eighteen.	*soixante-dix-sept*, seventy-seven.
dix-neuf, nineteen.	*soixante-dix-huit*, seventy-eight.

soixante-dix-neuf, seventy-nine.
quatre-vingt (s), eighty.
quatre-vingt-un, eighty-one.
quatre-vingt-deux, eighty-two etc.
quatre-vingt-dix, ninety.
quatre-vingt-onze, ninety-one.
quatre-vingt-douze, ninety-two.
quatre-vingt-treize, ninety three etc.
cent, a hundred.
cent un, a hundred and one.
cent deux, a hundred and two, etc.
deux cents, two hundred.
trois cents, three hundred, etc.
quinze cents, fifteen hundred, etc.
mille, mil, a thousand.
(*un million*, a million).

Examples.

Cinq enfants, five children.
trente-six chevaux, thirty six horses.
trois cent quatre-vingt-quinze aunes, 395 yards.

Remarks.

1) *Et*, and, can be expressed before *un* after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante* and *soixante: trente et un etc.*

2) The cardinal numerals do not admit of a change in their terminations, except *cent* and *quatre-vingt*. — *Cent* takes an *s*, when several hundreds, not followed by another number, are mentioned, as:

trois cents francs, 300 francs.
sept cents personnes, 700 persons. — But:
sept cent vingt personnes, 720 persons.

3) *Quatre-vingts* loses its *s*, when followed by another numeral. Ex.:

quatre-vingts écoliers, 80 pupils. But:
quatre-vingt-deux aunes, 82 yards.

4) *Cent* and *mille* are never accompanied by the indefinite article as in English. Ex.:

a hundred or a thousand pounds, *cent ou mille livres.*

5) When one thousand is used for dates, it is rendered in French by *mil*, with one *l* only, thus:

en mil huit cent cinquante-huit = in the year 1858.

6) The expression: „I am 20, 30, 40 etc. years old", cannot be rendered literally, but must be expressed thus: *J'ai vingt ans, — trente ans, etc.* — How old are you? is translated: *Quel âge avez-vous?* Ex.:

Quel âge a votre frère? how old is your brother?
Il a dix-huit ans, he is eighteen years old.

7) Collective numbers are:

une huitaine, a series of eight.
une dixaine, half a score.
une douzaine, a dozen.
une vingtaine, a score.
une centaine, the hundred.
un millier, the thousand.
un million, a million.

L'habitant (m.), the inhabitant.
la ville, the town.
le jour, the day.
la nuit, the night.
font, make.
né, fem. *née*, born.
la semaine, the week.
le mois, the month.
le marchand, the merchant.
l'église (fem.), the church.

Exercise. 29.

1 Deux et trois font cinq. 2 Ce mois a trente jours. 3 Ils ont reçu onze aunes de drap. 4 Quel âge a votre ami? 5 Il a quarante-six ans. 6 Son père est né en 1835. 7 Combien d'habitants a cette ville? 8 Une semaine a sept jours. 9 L'an 1887. 10 Notre ville a deux cent cinquante églises. 11 68 et 42 font 110. 12 Les enfants de cet homme ont trente-deux francs. 13 Notre roi a 265 chevaux. 14 La ville de Liverpool avait en 1881 plus de *(more than)* 500,000 habitants.

Exercise. 30.

1 We have 84 pupils. 2 395. 3 763. 4 300. 5 80. 6 62. 7 91. 8 73. 9 They have seen 21 merchants. 10 This town has 263,721 inhabitants. 11 He is 34 years old. 12 Her father was born in 1847. 13 We have a score roses. 14 The year 1863. 15 They were 4 nights in that house. 16 My friend has 9 children, 5 sons and 4 daughters. 17 London has more than 10,000 churches. 18 71 and 84 make 155. 19 They have 293,421 francs.

LESSON XVI.

2. *Ordinal Numbers.*

Except *le premier* and *le second*, the ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal by changing *e* mute into *ième*, and by adding this syllable to those which end in another consonant. Among these, however, *cinq* takes *u* before *ième (cinquième)*, and *neuf* changes the *f* into *v (neuvième)*. They are as follows:

le premier, *la première*, } the first.
le second, *la seconde*, *le, la deuxième*, } the second.
le troisième, the third.
le quatrième, the fourth.
le cinquième, the fifth.
le sixième, the sixth.
le septième, the seventh.
le huitième, the eighth.
le neuvième, the ninth.
le dixième, the tenth.
le onzième, the eleventh.
le douzième, the twelfth.
le treizième, the thirteenth.
le quatorzième, the fourteenth.
le quinzième, the fifteenth.
le seizième, the 16th.
le dix-septième, the 17th.
le dix-huitième, the 18th.
le dix-neuvième, the 19th.
le vingtième, the 20th.
le vingt-unième, the 21st.

le vingt-deuxième, the 22nd, etc.
le trentième, the 30th.
le quarantième, the 40th.
le cinquantième, the 50th.
le soixantième, the 60th.
le soixante-dixième, the 70th.
le soixante-onzième, the 71st.
le soixante-douzième, the 72nd, etc.
le quatre-vingtième, the 80th.
le quatre-vingt-unième, the 81st.
le quatre-vingt-dixième, the 90th.
le centième, the 100th.
le cent et unième, the 101st.
le cent deuxième, the 102nd, etc.
le cent vingtième, the 120th.
le deux centième, the 200th.
le six cent soixante-quinzième, the 675th.
le millième, the 1000th.
le dernier, the last.

Remarks.

1) *Unième*, is used only after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante etc.*, as:
Charles est le vingt-unième de sa classe.

2) Days of the month (except *le premier* and *le dernier*) are expressed by cardinal numbers, as:

the first of April, *le premier avril;* but:
the 2nd, 3rd, 4th etc. of May, *le deux*, *trois*, *quatre etc. mai* (or *de mai*).
the eleventh of March, *le onze* (without apostrophe) *mars.*
the twentieth of June, *le vingt juin.*

The question: „What day of the month is it to-day?" is translated: *Quel jour du mois avons-nous aujourd'hui? or: Quel quantième sommes-nous?*

Answer: *C'est aujourd'hui le dix*, or:
Nous sommes le dix, or: *nous avons le dix.*

The English „on the sixth" etc. is rendered in French *le six.* Ex.: On the sixth of May, *le six mai.*

3) Proper names of princes, too, take in French the cardinal numbers without the article, except the first and sometimes the second, as:

Henri premier, Henry the first.
Henri second or: *deux*, Henry the second.
Henri quatre, Henry the fourth.
Louis quatorze, Lewis the 14th.

Note. The German emperor *Charles V* bears in French the name of *Charles-Quint*, and Pope *Sixtus V* that of *Sixte-Quint.*

4) The distinctive numbers (adverbs of number) are formed from the ordinal by adding *-ment* or *-ement* to the final:

premièrement, first. *deuxièmement*, secondly.
troisièmement, thirdly, etc.

5) Fractional numbers are expressed by ordinal numbers, as in English, but only from five upwards, as:

un cinquième, a fifth. *un huitième*, an eighth.
un sixième, a sixth. *un dixième*, a tenth.

The others are as follows:

a half = *un demi*. f. *une demie*. | the half = *la moitié*.
a third = *un tiers*. | a quarter *or* fourth, *un quart*.
one pound and a half = *une livre et demie*.

6) The hours of the day or night are expressed thus:

two o'clock, *deux heures*.
a quarter past two, *deux heures et (un) quart*.
half past two, *deux heures et demie*.
a quarter to three, *trois heures moins un quart*.
at twelve o'clock (at noon), *à midi*.
at twelve o'clock (midnight), *à minuit*.

7) Proportional numbers which express a quantity multiplied, are:

simple, simple. *quadruple*, fourfold.
double, twofold. *centuple*, centuple, a hundredfold.
triple, triple, threefold.

Names of the months.

Janvier, January. *juillet*, July.
février, February. *août*, August.
mars, March. *septembre*, September.
avril, April. *octobre*, October.
mai, May. *novembre*, November.
juin, June. *décembre*, December.
en janvier, in January.

Names of the days.

Dimanche, Sunday. *jeudi*, Thursday.
lundi, Monday. *vendredi*, Friday.
mardi, Tuesday. *samedi*, Saturday.
mercredi, Wednesday. *on Tuesday*, (*le*) mardi.

Exercise. 31.

1 Quelle heure est-il? 2 Il est cinq heures et quart. 3 Nous avons acheté (*bought*) une livre et demie de sucre. 4 Février est le second, juillet le septième et décembre le dernier mois de l'année (*year*). 5 Jeudi est le quatrième jour de la semaine. 6 En novembre les jours sont courts (*short*). 7 Mon frère Jean est né (*was born*) le vingt-six mai, mil huit cent soixante-dix. 8 Un jour est la septième partie (*part*) de la semaine. 9 La semaine est la cinquantième partie de l'année. 10 Nous avons reçu deux livres et demie de pommes de ce marchand. 11 Cinq est la dixième partie de cinquante.

P.6.206

Exercise. 82.

1 What day of the month had we yesterday? 2 Yesterday was the sixteenth. 3 He has bought 4½ pounds of pears for (*pour*) his children. 4 August is the eighth month in the year. 5 We received many friends on Wednesday. 6 On the fifth of June. 7 The days are not short in June and July. 8 What o'clock is it? 9 It is a quarter to six. 10 December is the last month in the year; January is the first. 11 To-day is the nineteenth of March. 12 My father will be in London on the tenth of September. 13 Henry VIII, king of England. 14 Four is the half of eigth. 15 Saturday is the last day of the week. 16 Give me three pounds and a half of sugar. 17 We shall have a holiday (*un congé*) on the twentieth of June. 18 His brothers will be here on Saturday. 19 It is twenty five minutes (*minutes*, fem.) to three. 20 They have given the half of that cheese to my neighbour. 21 On the fifth of November 1603.

LESSON XVII.

Indefinite numeral Adjectives.

These words are sometimes classed among the pronouns, as some of them may be so used. The indefinite numeral adjectives take their place before the noun and agree with it in number and gender.

Chaque m., and f. each.	*quelque*, some, any.
tout, f. *toute*, all, every.	*certain*, —*e*, a certain.
aucun, —*e* } not one, no.	*plusieurs*, m. & f., several.
nul, *nulle* } not one, no.	*divers*, f. *diverses* } different.
maint, —*e*, many a.	*différents*, f. —*entes* } different.

Examples.

Chaque maison, each house.	*quelque temps*, some time.
toute ville, every town.	*quelques pommes*, some or a few apples.
aucun pays, no country.	*plusieurs hommes*, several men.
nulle règle, no rule.	etc.
maint homme, many a man.	

Remarks.

1) *Tout* has the double meaning of every, and all or whole; in the latter case, it is accompanied by an article or a possessive adjective. *Toute ville*, every town. *Toute la ville*, all the town or the whole town. The plural of *tout* is *tous* and of *toute*, *toutes*.

Tous les hommes, all men.
Toutes les lettres, all the letters.
Tous ses enfants, all his children.

2) *Aucun* and *nul* can only be used of individual things, and answer to the English 'not one'. They require the particle *ne* before the verb. The English 'no' is mostly translated by: *pas de* or *point de:*

Je n'ai aucune faute, I have not one mistake.
Je n'ai pas de (or *point de*) *faute*, I have no mistake.

Dieu, God.	*appliqué* (pl. —*s*) diligent.
la version, the translation.	*facile*, easy.
le nom, the name.	*la faute*, mistake, fault.
la classe, the class.	*le siècle*, the century.
il y a, there is, there are.	*fait*, makes, made.
le plaisir, the pleasure.	*le temps*, time, weather.

Exercise. 33.

1 Chaque homme a ses fautes. 2 J'ai vu toute la ville. 3 Donnez-moi quelques crayons. 4 Tous les hommes sont mortels (*mortal*). 5 Ce garçon a fait plusieurs fautes dans sa version. 6 Maint écolier n'est pas appliqué. 7 Il connaît tout le monde (*everybody*). 8 Ils n'avaient aucune faute. 9 Je suis le premier de ma classe. 10 Mon frère était ici quelque temps. 11 Toute la nuit était froide (*cold*). 12 Cette version n'est pas facile. 13 Nous vivons (*live*) dans le dix-neuvième siècle.

A.6.207

Exercise. 34.

14 There are twenty one pupils in my class. 15 God is the father of all men. 16 We have seen the whole (*all the*) town. 17 Several men were here yesterday. 18 Many a man is happy. 19 I have no mistakes in my translation. 20 Give me a few pens. 21 Every boy was diligent. 22 All his children were ill. 23 Several men have the same name. 24 No country is without (*sans*) faults. 25 He has given all his money to these men. 26 Some men are not happy. 27 We have received all the letters this morning (*matin*). 28 Their neighbour has sold a few flowers. 29 Have they made no mistakes in their translation? 30 Bring me several pounds of sugar. 31 Each boy has received seven francs. 32 He has no friends. 33 You have several friends in Paris. 34 There are many men who (*qui*) have the same name.

LESSON XVIII.

Adjectives.

Adjectives are liable to the changes of gender and number.

A. The feminine of French adjectives.

General rule. The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* to the masculine termination, if this does not end in e mute. Ex.:

petit, small, little; fem. *petite*.
grand, great, large; „ *grande*.
joli, pretty; „ *jolie*.
appliqué, diligent; „ *appliquée*.

Particular rules. 1) Adjectives which end in *e* mute, are alike in the masculine and feminine gender:

facile, easy; fem. *facile*.
sage, wise; „ *sage*.

2) Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil* and *n*, further, monosyllables ending in *s* and *t* double their final consonant before *e* mute of the feminine, as:

cruel, cruel; fem. *cruelle*.
bon, good; fem. *bonne*.
bas, low; fem. *basse*.
gros, big; fem. *grosse*.
sot, stupid; fem. *sotte*.

To these belong also the following:

épais, fem. *épaisse*, thick.
exprès, fem. *expresse*, express.
muet, fem. *muette*, dumb.

3) Adjectives which end in *f*, become feminine by changing *f* into *ve*, as:

vif, quick, lively; f. *vive*.
neuf, new; f. *neuve*.
actif, active; f. *active*.
bref, short; f. *brève*.

4) Adjectives ending in *x*, change this *x* into *se*, as:

heureux, happy, lucky; f. *heureuse*.
jaloux, jealous; f. *jalouse*.
paresseux, lazy; f. *paresseuse*.
faux, false, makes its fem. *fausse*.

5) Adjectives which end in *er* and *et*, take in the feminine the grave accent, as:

léger, light; f. *légère*.
amer, bitter; f. *amère*.
inquiet, uneasy; f. *inquiète*.

6) Of the adjectives ending in *c*, the three following change this *c* into *che*, as:

blanc, white; f. *blanche*.
franc, frank; f. *franche*.
sec, dry; f. *sèche*.

The others ending in *c* take *-que*, as:

turc, Turkish; f. *turque*.
public, public; f. *publique*.
grec, Greek, has in the fem. *grecque*.

7) The following adjectives do not quite agree with the foregoing rules:

long, long; f. *longue*.
aigu, acute; f. *aiguë*.
frais, fresh; f. *fraîche*.
doux, sweet, soft; f. *douce*.
malin, wicked; f. *maligne*.
bénin, benign; f. *bénigne*.

8) The following are more irregular in the formation of their feminine, as:

beau (bel), beautiful; f. *belle*.
nouveau (nouvel), new; f. *nouvelle*.
mou (mol), soft; f. *molle*.
fou (fol), foolish; f. *folle*.
vieux (vieil), old; f. *vieille*.

Note. The above words in parenthesis *bel, nouvel etc.* are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as: *un bel arbre*, a fine tree; *un nouvel ordre*, a new order; *un fol espoir*, a foolish hope.

B. The plural of Adjectives.

The rules given for the plural of substantives apply also to adjectives. Ex.:

grand, f. *grande;*	plur.	*grands*, f. *grandes*.
appliqué, f. *appliquée*;	„	*appliqués*, f. *appliquées*.
gras, f. *grasse*, fat;	„	*gras*, f. *grasses*.
royal, f. *royale*, royal;	„	*royaux*, f. *royales*.
beau, f. *belle*, beautiful;	„	*beaux*, f. *belles*.
vieux, f. *vieille*, old;	„	*vieux*, f. *vieilles*.

fou, mou and *bleu* make in the plural *fous, mous* and *bleus*.

C. Concord of Adjectives.

The adjective must agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun which it qualifies, as:

La grande maison, the large house.
La maison est grande, the house is large.
Les maisons sont grandes, the houses are large.

When the same adj. refers to nouns of different genders, it is put in the masculine plural.

Exercise. 35.

1 Ce cheval est vieux. 2 Cette maison n'est pas grande. 3 Ce drap est très épais. 4 Ces enfants-là sont inquiets. 5 La fille de notre voisin est muette. 6 Le père est bon, la mère est bonne. 7 Sa sœur n'était pas paresseuse. 8 Cette bière est amère. 9 Soyez bons, mes petits enfants. 10 Nous avons reçu une jolie rose. 11 Il y a huit grandes fenêtres dans notre maison. 12 Tous les écoliers de cette classe sont appliqués. 13 Ta version est facile.

1 Elle a un chapeau neuf. 2 Cette fille est jalouse. 3 J'ai un livre grec. 4 Le temps est bref. 5 Donnez-moi de l'eau fraîche. 6 Notre frère est gros. 7 Vos chiens sont bons. 8 Ils ont du drap blanc.

Exercise. 36.

9 This boy is happy. 10 That girl is not happy. 11 Our house is old. 12 This man's son is dumb. 13 The water is fresh. 14 These roses are pretty. 15 They have given some beautiful flowers to our neighbour's children. 16 The church is very old. 17 This cloth is white. 18 Those men are idle. 19 These girls are diligent. 20 My penknife is new. 21 The weather is beautiful. 22 This man is foolish. 23 We have a beautiful tree in our garden. 24 The master has good pupils. 25 His sisters are here. 26 Time is short. 27 That man is lively. 28 My pen is light. 29 Give me a good pen.

LESSON XIX.

Le soleil, the sun.	*le couteau*, the knife.
la lune, the moon.	*la terre*, the earth.
un habit, a coat.	*court*, short.
une orange, an orange.	*l'été*, summer.
une plume, a pen, feather.	*l'hiver*, winter.
le papier, the paper.	*la montagne*, the mountain.

Exercise. 37.

30 Les nuits sont courtes en été. 31 Son habit est neuf. 32 Cette orange est amère. 33 La nuit est longue. 34 Les jours ne sont pas longs. 35 Cette plume est légère. 36 Ce papier est blanc. 37 La terre est grande. 38 Le soleil est plus grand (*greater*) que (*than*) la lune. 39 Cet homme n'est pas très bénin. 40 Les montagnes de ce pays sont hautes (*high*). 41 Les filles de notre voisin sont très appliquées. 42 J'ai une belle montre d'or. 43 Ces maisons sont vieilles. 44 Nous avions cet été de grandes pommes dans notre jardin. 45 Quelle belle histoire! 46 La terre n'est pas si (*so*) grande que (*as*) la lune. 47 Cette histoire est longue. 48 Mon père est ma mère sont vieux. 49 Les filles de cet homme sont paresseuses. 50 La maison royale est à Londres. 51 Le canif de ce petit garçon est beau. 52 Cette bonne mère a deux bons fils.

Exercise. 38.

53 There are many beautiful trees in this garden. 54 Where is my father's good dog? 55 This coat is new. 56 The days are short in winter, and long in summer. 57 His uncle's horse is old. 58 Have you seen this beautiful tree? 59 These mountains are low. 60 That boy's sister is dumb. 61 Your coat is light. 62 These girls are foolish. 63 Our translation is easy. 64 I have received a beautiful rose from his aunt. 65 Our brothers are

very active. 1 My sister is not happy. 2 The parents of those children were uneasy. 3 Those hats are low. 4 Give me some good butter. 5 Their neighbour's sons are wicked. 6 Bring me a Greek book. 7 Have you any good oranges? 8 We have some good apples and pears. 9 This boy's hat is new. 10 Where is my father's large knife? 11 These parents are not happy; their children are ill.

LESSON XX.

The place of Adjectives.

The place of adjectives is not, as in English, always before the noun; on the contrary, most of them are placed after it. The following are the principal rules:

A. Adjectives placed before the substantive.

Beau, beautiful, fine.	*joli,* pretty.	*petit,* little, small.
bon, good.	*mauvais,* bad.	*saint,* holy, saint.
grand, great, large.	*meilleur,* better.	*tout,* all.
gros, big.	*moindre,* less.	*vieux, vieille,* old.
jeune, young.		*vrai,* true.

Examples.

Un beau pays, a fine country.
Un bon ami, a good friend.
Une grande ville, a large town *or* city.
Un jeune lion, a young lion.
Un mauvais lit, a bad bed.
Un meilleur avis, a better advice.
Un vieux soldat, an old soldier, etc.

Note. Grand is placed after its noun, when it signifies tall: *un homme grand,* a tall man.

NB. It is to be observed, that substantives preceded by an adjective, when used in the partitive sense, take only *de* before them, for both genders and numbers, instead of *du, de la* or *des.* (See p. 20, 4); ex.:

de bon vin, (some) good wine.
de mauvaise encre, (some) bad ink.
de belles fleurs, beautiful flowers.
de grands vaisseaux, large vessels.

B. Adjectives placed after the substantive.

1) Those which denote a figure, colour or taste. Ex.:

une table ronde, a round table.
un habit noir, a black coat.

une robe blanche, a white dress.
de l'eau chaude, warm water.
un fruit amer, a bitter fruit.
le ciel bleu, the blue sky.

2) Those of nations. Ex.:

la langue française, the French language.
un vaisseau anglais, an English vessel.
un soldat prussien, a Prussian soldier.

NB. Adjectives denoting nationality are not written with a capital.

3) The participles used as adjectives. Ex.:

un livre amusant, an amusing book.
ma fille chérie, my beloved daughter.

C. The following adjectives have a different meaning according as they stand before or after the noun.

Mon cher ami, my dear friend.	*Un livre cher,* a dear (costly) book.
Un honnête homme, a good man.	*Un homme honnête,* a polite man.
Un brave homme, an honest man.	*Un homme brave,* a brave man.
Un grand homme, a man of genius.	*Un homme grand,* a tall man.
Un petit homme, a little (short) man.	*Un homme petit,* a mean man.

Exercise. 39.

1 Les soldats français sont braves. 2 Nous avons lu une histoire amusante. 3 J'ai un habit noir. 4 Il demeure dans un beau pays. 5 Ils avaient de beau fruit dans leur jardin. 6 Ces enfants sont sages. 7 Les vaisseaux anglais sont grands. 8 Avez-vous vu le joli chien du roi? 9 Il a perdu son chapeau neuf. 10 Donnez-moi de bon drap noir. 11 Le chapeau de cet enfant est noir. 12 Mon cher ami est en Espagne. 13 Son oncle est un homme honnête. 14 Avez-vous bu *(drunk)* de bon vin? 15 Le vin n'était pas doux. 16 Pitt était un grand homme. 17 Ont-ils vu le petit chat? 18 As-tu de l'eau chaude? 19 L'eau est froide. 20 Où avez-vous acheté ce chapeau rond? 21 Donnez-moi une paire de gants blancs. 22 La robe de sa mère est blanche. 23 La langue française est facile. 24 A-t-il lu ce livre amusant? 25 Cette femme-ci a perdu son fils chéri. 26 Les gants sont noirs. 27 Où a-t-elle perdu son beau chapeau de soie? 28 Cet homme-là n'est pas franc.

Exercise. 40.

29 I have some fresh fruit. 30 Have they bought some white cloth? 31 Greek soldiers are brave. 32 We had some Turkish fruit.

1 These oranges are not very sweet. 2 The sky was blue yesterday. 3 This town has many good churches. 4 Do you like *(aimez-vous)* Greek wine? 5 This woman has lost her dear son. 6 My uncle has bought a pair of black gloves. 7 We have seen some large lions. 8 Has your neighbour many good friends *(v. vois. a-t-il)*? 9 Yes he has many English friends. 10 Give me four pounds of good apples. 11 Have they round hats? 12 These children had a bad bed. 13 Those men have given some good advice to the old soldier.

LESSON XXI.

Degrees of Comparison.

The two degrees of comparison are the comparative *(le comparatif)* and superlative *(le superlatif)*.

1) The comparative is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, — the latter by placing *le plus*, f. *la plus*, before an adjective.

Comparative.	*Superlative.*
Haut, high, *plus haut*, higher, fem. *haute, plus haute.*	*le plus haut*, *la plus haute*, the highest.

Mauvais, bad; comp. *plus mauvais, e*, worse; fem. *mauvaise, plus mauvaise*, worse; sup. *le plus mauvais, la plus mauvaise*, the worst.

Grand, e, large, great; comp. *plus grand*, f. *plus grande*, larger; sup. *le plus grand, la plus grande*, the largest.

Petit, e, little, small; comp. *plus petit, e*, smaller; sup. *le plus petit*, f. *la plus petite*, the smallest.

Note. When a possessive adjective is placed before the superlative, the article *le, la, les*, is dropped, as:

mon plus jeune frère, my youngest brother.

2) There is in French also: a lower and lowest degree which is effected by the words *moins*, less, for the comparative degree; and *le moins*, f. *la moins*, the least for the superlative.

Cruel, -le, cruel; comp. *moins cruel*, f. *moins cruelle*, less cruel *or* not so cruel; sup. *le moins cruel*, f. *la moins cruelle*, the least cruel.

Laid, e, ugly; comp. *moins laid, e*, less ugly; sup. *le moins laid*, f. *la moins laide*, the least ugly.

3) The following three adjectives have an irregular comparison:

bon, f. *bonne*, good; comp. *meilleur, e*, better; sup. *le meilleur, la meilleure*, the best;

(*mauvais, e*, in the meaning wicked); comp. *pire*, worse; sup. *le pire*, f. *la pire*, the worst;

(*petit, e*); comp. *moindre*, less; sup. *le moindre*, f. *la moindre* the least;

4) *As* before an adjective is rendered *aussi;* 'as' after, it, and 'than' are both translated *que*. Ex.:

Il est aussi heureux que moi, he is as happy as I am.
Jean est plus fort que son frère, John is stronger than his brother.

Exercise. 41.

1 Ce garçon est plus grand que son frère. 2 Le marchand est plus riche que vous. 3 Cette fille est la première de sa classe. 4 Le lion est plus fort *(stronger)* que le cheval. 5 Londres est la ville la plus grande du monde. 6 Êtes-vous plus appliqués que les fils de notre maître? 7 Cette femme est moins riche que votre frère. 8 Ma plus jeune sœur est très malade. 9 Ce vin est meilleur que cette bière. 10 Ces roses sont jolies. 11 Avez-vous acheté le meilleur fruit? 12 Ces pommes-ci sont pires que ces poires-là. 13 Charles est le moindre de sa classe. 14 Le vingt-deux juin est le jour le plus long de l'année. 15 Sa tante est plus heureuse que ma mère. 16 Les jours en hiver sont plus courts que les nuits. 17 Les poires de cette femme sont les meilleures. 18 Le drap blanc est moins utile que le drap noir.

Exercise. 42.

19 William is the first in his class. 20 We have bought some better fruit than you. 21 A lion is very strong. 22 This cat is not so strong as that dog. 23 My parents are less rich than your friends, but they are happier and more contented. 24 These girls are more diligent than those boys. 25 William is as idle as John. 26 We have received two pounds of the best apples. 27 Louisa is smaller than her sister. 28 The highest mountains are in Asia *(Asie)*. 29 My youngest sister is in Paris. 30 They have bought the largest house. 31 Has he sold his best horse? 32 London is larger than Paris. 33 Are you as diligent as John? 34 These children are the prettiest in the town. 35 Will they have received better pens than you? 36 They have received the worst pens. 37 My translation is easier than yours *(la vôtre)*. 38 These books are dearer than those inkstands. 39 My sister is happier than I. 40 The master has lost his best pupils. 41 Have you more money than his brother? 42 I have not so much money, but I have more books. 43 How many good books have you? 44 He has read the worst books. 45 I am not so *(si)* young as your

friend. / I am 22 years old, and he is 19 years old. 2 Which is the youngest pupil in your class?

LESSON XXII.

The following four lessons form a recapitulation of the preceding 21 lessons.

Exercise. 43.

3 Nous avons beaucoup de fleurs dans notre jardin. 4 Quel cheval ont-ils acheté? 5 J'ai trois plumes et huit crayons. 6 Donnez-moi du pain. 7 Ce chien est petit. 8 Avez-vous mangé de bon chou? 9 Il y a beaucoup de cailloux dans cette ville. / 10 Les joujoux de ces enfants sont jolis. // J'ai sept clous. / 12 Le cheval est un animal très utile. / 13 Ils ont reçu deux chapeaux et trois paires de gants noirs. / 14 Les vœux de cet homme ne sont pas bons. / 15 Les yeux de ce garçon sont bleus. / 16 Les cieux annoncent *(announce)* la gloire *(glory)* de Dieu. / 17 Il y a deux trous dans mon gant. / 18 Avez-vous vu ce joli hibou? / 19 Les bijoux de la reine sont beaux. 20 A-t-il mangé les bonnes noix? 21 As-tu vu la porte de cette maison? 22 Il y a beaucoup de beaux châteaux dans cette ville.

Exercise. 44.

23 There are 25 cabbages in this garden. 24 These girls' hats are white. 25 Have you eaten any walnuts? 26 I have 29 pebbles in my pocket. 27 He has given these flowers to our neighbour's children. 28 My friend's brother is ill. 29 Will they have seen the king's horses? 30 He will have received a pair of new gloves. 31 The life of man is short. 32 My brother's coat is old. 33 They have lost a large fortune. 34 These children have had a good dinner. 35 My uncle's apartments are not large. 36 He has forgotten *(oublié)* his friend's name. 37 Have you enough salt and pepper? 38 Have they not seen the king's throne? 39 How many birds has he? 40 This water is not fresh. 41 My brother's room is very beautiful. 42 Were they here yesterday? 43 My friends will be here to-morrow. 44 Give me some bread and cheese. 45 Have you any oil in that bottle? 46 Has she any money? 47 Will they have had any friends? 48 Is there any good water in this house? 49 Bring me a half a pound of mustard. 50 England has better vessels than France. 51 Had they had any coffee? 52 The coffee was very bad.

LESSON XXIII.

Exercise. 45.

1 Nous avons de bons livres. 2 A-t-il de la viande fraîche? 3 Cette eau n'est pas chaude. 4 Cet homme connaît tout le monde. 5 J'ai bu *(drunk)* de mauvaise bière. 6 Il y a trop d'écoliers dans cette classe. 7 Ils auraient eu peu d'amis. 8 Ma mère a acheté une table de bois. 9 N'avez-vous pas de sucre? 10 Il a vendu toutes ses maisons. 11 Donnez-moi quelques livres. 12 Cet homme a beaucoup d'amis à Paris. 13 Cet enfant a mangé un morceau de pain. 14 Il y a neuf bouteilles de vin dans ma chambre. 15 Combien d'argent a-t-il? 16 Il a soixante-dix francs. 17 Mes écoliers ne sont pas appliqués. 18 Elle a perdu sa bague d'argent. 19 Mon oncle a une montre d'or. 20 Jean est à New-York. 21 Jeanette a reçu dix francs de son oncle. 22 Ma tante demeure à Lyon.

Exercise. 46.

23 Give these books to that boy. 24 Have you read the works of Racine? 25 There are many books on my table. 26 How many pears have you eaten *(mangées)*? 27 I have eaten 6 pears and two apples. 28 I have a pair of new white gloves. 29 Where is the master of this class? 30 He is in his room. 31 They will have had much pleasure. 32 My children would have been diligent. 33 He would have eaten some bread. 34 We had lost our hats. 35 Would he not have been here? 36 He will be here to-morrow. 37 His sister's children had had much money. 38 I am not diligent. 39 You will be happy. 40 He would have been happy. 41 Has she not received a present *(cadeau m.)* from her father? 42 These children's mother was very ill. 43 My sister's friend has a useful book. 44 Would they not be contented? 45 I have lost my gloves.

LESSON XXIV.

Exercise. 47.

46 Quels livres avez-vous lus aujourd'hui? 47 Les montagnes de ce pays sont très hautes. 48 Nous sommes toujours ici. 49 Ces hommes-là sont riches. 50 Ils étaient très heureux. 51 Quelle fleur avez-vous? 52 Cet arbre est beau. 53 Quelle heure est-il? 54 Il est deux heures moins quart. 55 Il a lu les mêmes livres que vous. 56 Où est Monsieur votre père? 57 Il est dans sa chambre. 58 Leurs enfants sont appliqués. 59 Mon père et ma mère sont à Londres. 60 Cet homme aime ses fils. 61 L'an mil huit cent quatre-vingt-sept. 62 Quel âge a votre sœur? 63 Elle a dix-huit ans. 64 Nous avons acheté treize aunes de drap noir. 65 Cet homme a deux mille livres. 66 Ces arbres sont gros.

Exercise. 48.

1 19 days. 2 12 months. 3 81 years. 4 763 soldiers. 5 200 horses. 6 There are 12974 houses in this town. 7 The 11th day of the month. 8 The 9th man. John is the 5th in his class. 9 William is the last. 10 9½ pounds of butter. 11 The 24th of March 1884. 12 A week is the fifty second part of a year. 13 7 nights and 3 days. 14 28 times *(fois)* 5 make 140. 15 The 21st of January. 16 On Friday the 14th. of August. 17 William III, king of England. 18 Fifthly. 19 Lastly. 20 Twenty-five minutes to ten. 21 5 is the 9th part of 45. 22 We see *(voyons)* our father every day. 23 He has lost all his money. 24 Where have you seen all those soldiers? 25 Many a child is contented. 26 Give me a few books. 27 Each boy has a franc. 28 He has made several mistakes in his translation.

LESSON XXV.

Exercise. 49.

29 Ces poires ne sont pas douces. 30 Ces chapeaux sont très bas. 31 Les arbres dans notre jardin sont jolis. 32 Cette femme est vieille. 33 Cette fille est folle. 34 Le soleil est plus grand que la lune. 35 La lune est plus grande que la terre. 36 Ce papier est mauvais. 37 Ces couteaux sont neufs. 38 Le ciel est bleu. 39 Son habit est noir. 40 Avez-vous de bonne encre? 41 Mon cher ami est à Londres.

Exercise. 50.

42 How many soldiers have you seen *(vus)*? 43 We have seen more than *(de)* 10,000. 44 What day of the month is it? 45 To-day is the 28th. 46 He will be at the house of my friend to-morrow. 47 I have read this beautiful book. 48 They have given a pair of stockings to that little boy. 49 His mother will be here on Monday, the 18th. 50 How old is your sister's child? 51 We shall have had much pleasure. 52 Has he not received a present from his master? 53 Our uncle's friends are in America. 54 Which is the best pupil in this class? 55 Give this black hat to that child. 56 My sister is younger than my brother. 57 Are there many birds in this garden? 58 Which bread is the best? 59 What book have you? 60 This table is long. 61 This merchant has lost all his money. 62 My pen is worse than my pencil. 63 12 times *(fois)* 12 are (make) 144.

LESSON XXVI.

Regular Verbs.

§ 1. True verbs, in opposition to the auxiliaries, are divided:

1) according to their form, into regular and irregular verbs;

2) according to their terminatiou, into the first, second and third conjugation;

3) according to their signification, into active, passive, neuter, reflective and impersonal verbs.

§ 2. There are, in French, only three regular conjugations, viz. those ending in *er*, *ir* and *re*. Verbs in *-oir* belong to the irregular ones, as their root undergoes manifold changes. The infinitive mood is to be considered as the radical part or ground-form, on which the conjugation depends. What precedes the termination *er*, *ir* or *re*, is the root, which, with regular verbs, always remains unaltered. To this are added the different terminations*), by which persons, tenses and moods are distinguished, and which are common to all the verbs of that same conjugation.

§ 3. *Formation of the tenses of the regular verbs.*

There are primitive tenses and derived tenses. The primitive tenses are:

1) the infinitive *(l'infinitif)*,

2) the participle present *(le participe présent)*,

3) the participle past *(le participe passé)*,

4) the present *(le présent)*,

5) the preterite *(le passé défini)*.

1) From the infnitive present are formed: the Future *(le futur)*, by adding *ai*, and the Conditional *(le conditionnel)* by adding *ais*, as: Inf. *donner*, Fut. *je donnerai*, and Cond. *je donnerais*; from *finir*: Fut. *je finirai*, Cond. *je finirais*. In the 3rd conjugation the final *e* is dropped: from *vendre:* Fut. *je vendrai*, Cond. *je vendrais*.

2) From the participle present: The present of the subjunctive, by changing *ant* into *e*, as: from *donnant: que je donne;* from *finissant: que je finisse*, from *vendant: que je vende.*

3) With the participle past are formed all the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliaries *avoir* or *être*, as: Part. past: *donné, fini, vendu* —: *j'ai donné, j'avais fini, j'aurai vendu, etc.*

*) In this grammar all the variable terminations of regular verbs are in the paradigms printed in larger Italics. *-ent* is silent.

4) From the *present of the Indicative*, viz. from its 1st person singular and the 1st and 2nd persons plural, the Imperative is formed, by suppressing the pronouns *je, nous, vous*, as: *donne* (give), *donnons, donnez*; *finis* (finish), *finissons, finissez etc.*

5) From the *preterite* is formed the Subjunctive imperfect, by changing the final *ai* into *asse* for the verbs of the 1st conjugation, and *is* into *isse* for the 2nd and 3rd conjugation. Ex.: from *je donnai: que je donnasse;* from *je finis: que je finisse;* from *je vendis: que je vendisse.*

First conjugation: *Donner*, to give.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je donne, I give.
tu donnes, thou givest.
il donne, he gives.
elle donne, she gives.
Pl. *nous donnons*, we give.
vous donnez, you give.
ils donnent, / *elles donnent*, they give.

Imperfect.

Je donnais, I gave.
tu donnais, thou gavest.
il donnait, he gave.
Pl. *nous donnions*, we gave.
vous donniez, you gave.
ils donnaient, they gave.

Preterite.

Je donnai, I gave.
tu donnas, thou gavest.
il donna, he gave.
Pl. *nous donnâmes*, we gave.
vous donnâtes, you gave.
ils donnèrent, they gave.

1st Future.

Je donnerai, I shall give.
tu donneras, thou wilt give.
il donnera, he will give.
nous donnerons, we shall g.
vous donnerez, you will give.
ils donneront, they will give.

1st Conditional.

Je donnerais, I should give.
tu donnerais, etc.
il donnerait, etc.
nous donnerions, we should g.
vous donneriez, etc.
ils donneraient, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Donne, give.
(*donnes-en*, (*) give of it).
donnons, let us give.
donnez, give.

*) The Imperative Mood of the first conjugation takes an *s*, when followed by *en* (of it, of them), or *y* (to *or* of it, to them). Ex.: *offres-en*, offer of it; *penses-y*, think of it.

Infinitive Mood.

Donner, to give. *de or à donner*, to give.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je donne, that I (may) give.
que tu donnes, etc.
qu'il donne, etc.
que nous donnions, that we (may) give.
que vous donniez, etc.
qu'ils donnent, etc.

Imperfect.

Que je donnasse, that I (might) give.
que tu donnasses, etc.
qu'il donnât, etc.
que nous donnassions, that we might give.
que vous donnassiez,
qu'ils donnassent,

Participles.

Present.
Donnant, giving.
en donnant, by giving, etc.

Past.
Donné, f. *donnée*, given.

Compound Tenses.

In active verbs, these are formed with the Part. past and the auxiliary *avoir*, to have.

Infinitive Mood.

Avoir donné, to have given.

Indicative Mood.

Perfect *(Compound of the Present)*.

J'ai donné, I have given.
tu as donné, thou hast given.
il a donné, he has given.
nous avons donné, we have given.
vous avez donné, you have given.
ils ont donné, / *elles ont donné*, they have given.

Pluperfect *(Compound of the Imperfect)*.

J'avais donné, I had given, etc.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus donné, I had given, etc.

2nd Future (Compound of the Future).

J'aurai donné, I shall have given, etc.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais donné, I should have given.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Que j'aie donné, that I (may) have given.
Que tu aies donné, that thou (mayest) have given, etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse donné, that I (might) have given, etc.

Participle.

Ayant donné, e, having given.

Remarks.

1) There is but one way to render the expressions: I give, I do give and I am giving, viz. *je donne:* — I was giving or I used to give = *je donnais,* etc.

2) In the interrogative and negative form, the auxiliary to do is not expressed. Ex.:

Present.

Interrogatively.

Est-ce que je donne? do I give?	pl. *donnons-nous?* do we give?
donnes-tu? dost thou give?	*donnez-vous?* do you give?
donne-t-il? does he give?	*donnent-ils?* } do they give?
donne-t-elle? does she give?	*donnent-elles?* } do they give?

Negatively.

Je ne donne pas, I do not give.
tu ne donnes pas, thou dost not give.
il ne donne pas, he does not give, etc.

Negative-interrogative.

Est-ce que je ne donne pas? do I not give?
ne donnes-tu pas? dost thou not give?
ne donne-t-il pas? does he not give? etc.

Perfect.

Ai-je donné? as-tu donné? a-t-il donné? etc.
Have I given *or* did I give?
Je n'ai pas donné, tu n'as pas donné, etc.
N'ai-je pas donné? n'as-tu pas donné? etc.

Conjugate in the same manner: *parler,* to speak; *porter,* to carry, to take; *admirer,* to admire; *aimer,* to love, etc.

NB. Je is apostrophed before a vowel, as: *j'aime, j'admire.*

Aimer, to love, like.	*désirer,* to desire.
apporter, to bring.	*coûter,* to cost.
pleurer, to cry.	*cacher,* to hide.
manger, to eat.	*trouver,* to find.
quand? when?	*souvent,* often.
demeurer, to live, dwell.	acheter, *to buy.*

Exercise. 51.

1 Nous aimons nos parents. 2 Ce livre coûte trois francs. 3 Je mangerai de bon pain. 4 Ils apporteront ces gants aux hommes. 5 Nous parlions avec *(with)* cet enfant. 6 Quand mangerez-vous ce fruit? 7 Les maîtres aiment leurs écoliers. 8 Cet enfant pleure-t-il souvent? 9 Où ont-ils caché mes livres? 10 Portez ce crayon à mon frère. 11 N'avez-vous pas mangé de bonne viande? 12 Nous mangerons ces pommes ce soir *(evening)*. 13 Désirent-ils ces plumes? 14 Il trouvera son ami dans la chambre de son père. 15 Les filles de ce marchand pleurent souvent. 16 Tu manges toujours. 17 Aimez vos parents, mes enfants. 18 Je portais cette lettre à notre voisin. 19 De qui *(whom)* parliez-vous ce matin *(morning)*? 20 Nous parlions de notre oncle. 21 Quand avez-vous trouvé ce chapeau? 22 Qu'il parle. 23 Qu'il parlât. 24 Vous trouvâtes. 25 Il apporta. 26 Ils aimèrent.

Exercise. 52.

27 This woman loves her son. 28 Do you eat pears? 29 We find our books. 30 She speaks French. 31 Does he often cry? 32 Let him speak. 33 We should love our parents. 34 You will eat some good cheese. 35 They were speaking to my father. 36 Where did he hide your pen? 37 How much did this house and garden cost? 38 Did they not speak to this man? 39 Do you like fruit? 40 We shall eat some bread. 41 I was admiring that flower. 42 Carry this letter to his friend. 43 How much did that inkstand cost? 44 It cost 21 francs in Lyons. 45 Did they find their friends? 46 They found their friends in our garden. 47 Do these children often cry? 48 My neighbour's child was crying. 49 He found this dog in the street *(la rue)*. 50 In which street does your uncle live? 51 I have not spoken to the master. 52 You will find your books on the table. 53 Bring us 4 pounds of pears. 54 Do your friends live in this street? 55 We shall buy many presents for *(pour)* our children? 56 Would they not have bought this palace? 57 My uncle used to live in this street. 58 Mr. Smith has bought all these trees. 59 That gold watch has cost too much money. 60 Where did they hide my hat? 61 When shall you desire this book? 62 They would buy some black cloth. 63 Where did you find these white gloves? 64 Let us buy some oranges.

LESSON XXVII.

Remarks on the orthography of some verbs of the first Conjugation.

Certain regular verbs in *-er* are, for the sake of euphony, liable to the following modifications.

1) Some verbs ending in *-ter* as: *jeter*, to throw; *rejeter*, to throw back; and those polysyllabic verbs ending in *eler*, as: *appeler*, to call; *venouveler*, to renew, etc., double the *t* or *l*, when they are followed by an *e* mute. This is the case in some persons of the Present, Future and Imperative, viz.:

Present.	*Imperative.*	*Future.*
Je je*tte* — nous jetons.	je*tte*.	je je*tt*erai.
tu je*tt*es — vous jetez.	pl. jetons.	tu je*tt*eras.
il je*tte* — ils je*tt*ent.	jetez.	etc.

J'appe*ll*e — nous appelons.	appe*ll*e.	j'appe*ll*erai.
tu appe*ll*es — vous appelez.	pl. appelons.	tu appe*ll*eras.
il appe*ll*e — ils appe*ll*ent,	appelez.	etc.

NB. The verb *acheter*, to buy, is not conjugated in this manner; it never doubles the *t*, but takes the grave accent *è*:

Pres. j'achète, tu achètes, il achète, nous achetons, vous achetez, ils achètent.

Fut. j'achèterai. *Imper.* achète, *pl.* achetez.

2) Dissyllabic verbs ending in *eler*, as: *geler*, to freeze, and all others that have an *e* mute in the last syllable but one, such as:

mener, to lead; *lever*, to lift up,

take the grave accent è, when the final consonant of the root is followed by an *e* mute. Ex.:

Infinitive: *mener*, to lead.

Pres. Je mène, tu mènes, il mène, nous menons, vous menez, ils mènent. *Imperf.* Je menais, tu menais etc.

Fut. Je mènerai, tu mèneras. *Imp.* mène, menons, menez.

The same change takes place with those verbs which have on the last syllable but one the *accent aigu*. They, however, retain the *é* in the Future and Conditional.

Infinitive: *espérer*, to hope.

Pres. J'espère, tu espères, il espère, nous espérons, vous espérez, ils espèrent. *Imperf.* J'espérais.

Imper. Espère, espérons, espérez. *Fut.* J'éspererai.

Such are: *préférer*, to prefer; *posséder*, to possess etc.

3) In verbs ending in *-ger*, es: *juger*, to judge; *partager*, to share or divide, the e is retained in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a* or *o*, in order to

give the *g* the same soft sound as in all other tenses and persons. Ex.:

Infinitive: ***manger,*** to eat.

Pres. Je mange, — *pl.* nous mang*e*ons. *P. pr.* mang*e*ant.
Impf. Je mang*e*ais, tu mang*e*ais, il mang*e*ait, nous mang*i*ons, vous mang*i*ez, ils mang*e*aient.
Pret. Je mang*e*ai, tu mang*e*as, il mang*e*a, nous mang*e*âmes, vous mang*e*âtes, ils mang*è*rent. *Imp.* mang*e*ons.
Part. past. mang*é*.

4) In verbs ending in *-cer*, as: *commencer*, to begin, a cedilla must be placed under the *c*, when this letter is followed by *a* or *o*. Ex.:

Infinitive: ***placer,*** to place.

Pres. Je place, tu places etc. — *pl.* nous pla*ç*ons etc.
Impf. Je pla*ç*ais, tu pla*ç*ais, il pla*ç*ait, nous placions, vous placiez, ils pla*ç*aient. *Imper.* pla*ç*ons etc.
Pret. Je pla*ç*ai, tu pla*ç*as, il pla*ç*a, nous pla*ç*âmes etc.
Part. pres. pla*ç*ant. — *Part. passé*: plac*é*.

5) Verbs ending in ***-ayer***, ***-oyer***, ***-uyer*** change the *y* into *i*, whenever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute. Such are:

payer, to pay. *employer*, to employ.
effrayer, to frighten. *essuyer*, to wipe.

Pres. Je pa*i*e, tu pa*i*es, il pa*i*e, *pl.* nous payons, vous payez, ils pa*i*ent. *Part. pr.* payant. *P. passé:* payé.
J'emplo*i*e, tu emplo*i*es, il emplo*i*ent, *pl.* nous employons, vous employez, ils emplo*i*ent. *P. pr.* employant.
J'essu*i*e, tu essu*i*es etc. — *pl.* ils essu*i*ent.
Impf. Je payais etc. — *pl.* nous payions, vous payiez etc.
J'employais etc. — *pl.* nous employions etc.
J'essuyais etc. — *pl.* nous essuyions etc.
Fut. Je pa*i*erai etc.; j'emplo*i*erai etc.; j'essu*i*erai etc.
Imper. Pa*i*e — payez; emplo*i*e — employez; essu*i*e — essuyez.

6) Verbs which in the Infinitive end in ***ier***, as: ***prier***, to pray; ***crier***, to cry, are in some cases spelt with a double ***ii***. This takes place in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and of the Present of the Subjunctive. Ex.:

Infinitive: ***oublier,*** to forget.

Indic. Imperf. pl. nous oubl*ii*ons, vous oubl*ii*ez, ils oubliaient.
Subj. Pres. pl. que nous pr*ii*ons, que vous pr*ii*ez etc.

La cerise, cherry.
le cousin, } cousin.
la cousine, f.}
la mort, death.
l'école (f.), school.
la main, hand.
la pierre, the stone.
penser à, to think of.
préférer, to prefer.
regarder, to look at.
presque, almost.
travailler, to work.
toujours, always.

Exercise. 53.

1 J'achète des cerises. 2 Nous menons ce chien à cet homme. 3 A qui *(whom)* pensez-vous? 4 Ne jetez pas ces pierres. 5 Ce garçon jette des pierres dans le jardin du roi. 6 Mon fils travaille toujours. 7 Regardez cette femme-là. 8 Ils possèdent une belle maison. 9 Il préfère ces livres. 10 Espère. 11 Espérons. 12 Mon cousin et ma cousine mangent de bon pain. 13 Il ne mangea pas. 14 Nous commencerons demain. 15 Nous commençons aujourd'hui. 16 Tu plaças. 17 Ce marchand emploie beaucoup d'hommes. 18 Nous mangeâmes. 19 Essuie. 20 Vous oubliiez.

Exercise. 54.

21 How many pupils are there in this school? 22 There are 342. 23 He was always thinking of his friend. 24 He prefers death. 25 Those men are always working. 26 He has given almost all his money to our neighbour's children. 27 How many men does this merchant employ? 28 Do not throw stones. 29 This man possesses many horses. 30 He hopes to have some new books. 31 They are leading this horse to my cousin. 32 Lift up your hands. 33 Let us not judge. 34 Which book does he prefer. 35 They hope. 36 We hope. 37 We shall buy some cherries. 38 You would buy some apples. 39 Shall we not eat? 40 I placed this book on the table. 41 They commenced yesterday. 42 We commence to-day. 43 Do not frighten those birds. 44 How much did he pay for this book? 45 Give me some money. 46 This girl always forgets her books. 47 Did they employ many men? 48 Pray to God.

LESSON XXVIII.

Second Conjugation: *finir*, to finish.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je finis, I finish.
tu finis, thou finishest.
il finit, he finishes.
elle finit, she finishes.
Pl. *nous finissons*, we finish.
vous finissez, you finish.
ils finissent, } they finish.
elles finissent, }

Imperfect.

Je finissais, I finished.	*nous finissions*, we finished.
tu finissais, etc.	*vous finissiez*, etc.
il finissait, etc.	*ils finissaient*, etc.

Preterite.

Je finis, I finished.	*nous finîmes*, we finished.
tu finis, etc.	*vous finîtes*, etc.
il finit, etc.	*ils finirent*, etc.

1st Future.

Je finirai, I shall finish.	*nous finirons*, we shall finish.
tu finiras, etc.	*vous finirez*, etc.
il finira, etc.	*ils finiront*, etc.

1st Conditional.

Je finirais, I should finish.	*nous finirions*, we should f.
tu finirais, etc.	*vous finiriez*, etc.
il finirait, etc.	*ils finiraient*, etc.

Infinitive Mood.

Finir, to finish.	*de* or *à finir*, to finish.

Imperative Mood.

Finis, finish.	*finissons*, let us finish.
	finissez, finish.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je finisse, that I (may) finish.	*que nous finissions*, that we finish.
que tu finisses, etc.	*que vous finissiez*, etc.
qu'il finisse, etc.	*qu'ils finissent*, etc.

Imperfect.

Que je finisse, that I (might) finish.	*que nous finissions*, that we (might) finish.
que tu finisses, etc.	*que vous finissiez*, etc.
qu'il finît, etc.	*qu'ils finissent*, etc.

Participles.

Present.	Past.
Finissant, finishing.	*Fini*, f. *finie*, finished.
en finissant, by finishing, etc.	

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood.

Avoir fini, to have finished.

Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

J'ai fini, I have finished.
tu as fini, thou hast finished,
il a fini, he has finished.
nous avons fini, we have finished, etc.

Pluperfect.

J'avais fini, I had finished, etc.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus fini, I had finished, etc.

2nd Future.

J'aurai fini, I shall have finished, etc.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurai fini, I should have finished, etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Que j'aie fini, that I (may) have finished, etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse fini, that I (might) have finished, etc.

Participle.

Ayant fini, having finished, etc.

Conjugate in the same manner: *bâtir,* to build; *choisir,* to choose; *remplir,* to fill, fulfil, etc.

Remarks.

The verb *haïr, to hate,* loses in the Present and Imperative singular its *diaeresis.* Otherwise it is quite regular and retains the two dots.

Pres. Je *hais,* tu *hais,* il *hait,* nous haïssons, vous haïssez, etc. *Imper. Hais; pl.* haïssons, haïssez. *Pret.* Je haïs, *I hated.*

Punir, to punish.
choisir, to choose.
bâtir, to build.
salir, to soil, dirty,
le devoir, the duty.
le thème, the exercise.
on, one (pronoun), they, people.
le travail, the work.

Exercise. 55.

1 Mon oncle bâtira une belle maison. 2 Le maître punit les écoliers. 3 Avez-vous choisi du drap? 4 Vous salirez vos habits. 5 Jean a fini son thème. 6 Remplissez vos devoirs. 7 Nous haïssons cet homme. 8 Quand finira-t-il sa version? 9 J'ai choisi une belle rose. 10 On bâtira ici. 11 Quel chapeau choisira-t-il? 12 Nous punissons ce garçon. 13 Nous n'avons pas fini nos thèmes.

Exercise. 56.

14 When will he build his house? 15 I have fulfilled my duty. 16 We have punished this bad boy. 17 We dirtied our coats and hats. 18 They will build several houses in this street. 19 Have they not finished their exercises? 20 I shall finish my translation in a half an hour. 21 Has he not finished his work? 22 They are choosing some black cloth. 23 Let us fulfil our duty. 24 Do not dirty your hats. 25 They were building many new houses. 26 They did not choose the best apples. 27 Did the master punish the idle boy? 28 Would they build some large houses?

LESSON XXIX.

Third Conjugation: ***Vendre,*** to sell.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tensse.

Je vends, I sell.	*nous vendons*, we sell.
tu vends, thou sellest.	*vous vendez*, you sell.
il vend, he sells.	*ils vendent*, they sell.
elle (on) vend, she (one) sells.	*elles vendent*, they sell.

Imperfect.

Je vendais, I sold.	*nous vendions*, we sold.
tu vendais, thou soldst.	*vous vendiez*, you sold.
il vendait, he sold.	*ils vendaient*, they sold.

Preterite.

Je vendis, I sold.	*nous vendîmes*, we sold.
tu vendis, etc.	*vous vendîtes*, etc.
il vendit, etc.	*ils vendirent*, etc.

1st Future.

Je vendrai, I shall sell.	*nous vendrons*, we shall sell.
tu vendras, etc.	*vous vendrez*, etc.
il vendra, etc.	*ils vendront*, etc.

1st Conditional.

Je vendrais, I should sell.	*nous vendrions*, we should sell.
tu vendrais, etc.	*vous vendriez*, etc.
il vendrait, etc.	*ils vendraient*, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Vends, sell. *vendons*, let us sell.
vendez, sell.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je vende, that I (may) sell. *que nous vendions*, that we (may) sell.
que tu vendes, etc. *que vous vendiez*, etc.
qu'il vende, etc. *qu'ils vendent*, etc.

Imperfect.

Que je vendisse, that I might sell. *que nous vendissions*.
que tu vendisses, etc. *que vous vendissiez*.
qu'il vendît, etc. *qu'ils vendissent*.

Participles.

Present.

Vendant, selling.
en vendant, by selling.

Past.

Vendu, f. *vendue*, sold.

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood.

Avoir vendu, to have sold.

Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

J'ai vendu, I have sold.
tu as vendu, thou hast sold.
il a vendu, he has sold.
nous avons vendu, we have sold, etc.

Pluperfect.

J'avais vendu, I had sold, etc.

Preterite.

J'eus vendu, I had sold, etc.

2nd Future.

J'aurai vendu, I shall have sold, etc.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais vendu, I should have sold, etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Que j'aie vendu, that I (may) have sold, etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse vendu, that I (might) have sold, etc.

Participle.

Ayant vendu, having sold.

Conjugate after this model: *perdre*, to lose, *attendre*, to wait, to expect; *répondre*, to answer, etc.

Remarks.

1) The verb ***battre***, to beat, is regularly conjugated, only in the singular of the *Present Indicative* and in the *Imperative mood* it loses one of its two *tt*.

Pres. Je *bats*, tu *bats*, il *bat*, nous battons, vous battez, etc.
Imper. *Bats.* *Part.* Battu.

2) The verb ***rompre***, to break, is conjugated in the *Pres. Indicative* as follows:

je romps, tu romps, il rompt, nous rompons, etc.

3) The verb ***rire***, to laugh, is also conjugated after the 3rd conjugation:

Pres. Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient.
Pret. Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rîmes, vous rîtes, ils rirent.
Fut. Je rirai etc.
The *Part. past* is ***ri***, *Part. pres. riant.*

In the same manner: *sourire*, to smile.

4) ***Conclure***, to conclude, is regular, as:
Pres. Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, etc.
Fut. Je conclurai.
Part. past. Conclu.

Only in the Preterite, it makes *je conclus* (not *je concluis*).

Entendre, to hear.
attendre, to wait for, expect.
défendre, to forbid, defend.
répondre, to answer.
le tailleur, the tailor.
pauvre, poor.
le fusil, the gun.
descendre, to come down.
perdre, to lose.
l'ennemi, m., the enemy.
le soulier, the shoe.
la botte, the boot.
le bruit, the noise, report.
pourquoi? why?

Exercise. 57.

1 J'entends un grand bruit. 2 Il perdit tout son argent. 3 Ils vendront leurs maisons et leurs jardins. 4 Ce marchand vend beaucoup de drap. 5 Votre père a-t-il vendu son château? 6 Les soldats défendent la ville. 7 N'avez-vous pas répondu à cette lettre? 8 Quand descendrez-vous? 9 L'ennemi a perdu 2463 soldats. 10 Avez-vous entendu le bruit de ce fusil? 11 Le

tailleur vendait de bon drap. 1 Ils ont vendu leur chevaux. 2 Ils perdirent leurs souliers. 3 Où a-t-il perdu ses bottes? 4 Ces pauvres femmes ont perdu leurs enfants. 5 Vous perdez vos livres toujours. 6 Ils n'avaient pas vendu leurs maisons. 7 Cet homme perdit sa montre. 8 Ils vendraient leurs châteaux.

Exercise. 58.

9 We shall sell our horses. 10 He sells wine. 11 Does she not sell flowers? 12 Would the merchant sell his cloth? 13 He sold all his cloth yesterday. 14 This man used to sell boots and shoes. 15 I have not sold all the trees in the garden. 16 Did she not hear the noise of those boys? 17 That poor old woman will have sold her fruit. 18 I heard a great noise in the street. 19 Answer his letter to-morrow. 20 We shall answer his letter to-day. 21 Why has the tailor not sold all his cloth? 22 Our soldiers will defend the town. 23 Where did he lose his hat? 24 He lost his hat in the street. 25 We heard the report of a gun. 26 Those boys are always laughing. 27 Why did she laugh? 28 When will he sell his watch? 29 We expect our friends to-day. 30 Did they not expect their father? 31 This poor tailor has lost much money. 32 Do you hear that noise in the street? 33 I have not laughed. 34 We smiled. 35 Why did they beat that poor dog? 36 Do not beat that poor animal. 37 I shall wait for my brother. 38 Would they have sold their houses if (*si*) we had been here? 39 We lose too much time. 40 She would answer your letter if she had any paper.

LESSON XXX.

Pronouns.

There are six sorts of pronouns called: 1) personal pronouns, 2) demonstrative, 3) possessive, 4) interrogative, 5) relative, 6) indefinite prononns.

Personal Pronouns.

Personal pronouns are those which directly refer to, and supply the place of a person or a thing. There are three persons: the first is the person who speaks; the second is the person spoken to; the third is the person spoken of. With these pronouns it must be observed whether they are intimately connected with, or governed by a verb, as: I speak, we go, I give you etc.; if this be the case, they are conjunctive *(pronoms conjoints)*; or if they are employed by themselves or with a preposition; in this case they are termed disjunctive *(pronoms disjoints)*. We begin with the latter.

Declension of the disjunctive personal Pronouns.

1st Person.

S. N. A. *Moi*, I. me.
G. *de moi*, of *or* from me.
D. *à moi*, to me, me.

Pl. N. A. *Nous*, we. us.
G. *de nous*, of *or* from us.
D. *à nous*, to us, us.

2nd Person.

S. N. A. *Toi*, thou. thee.
G. *de toi*, of *or* from thee.
D. *à toi*, to thee.

Pl. N. A. *Vous*, you.
G. *de vous*, of *or* from you.
D. *à vous*, to you.

3rd Person.

Masculine.

S. N. A. *Lui*, he. him.
G. *de lui*, of *or* from him.
D. *à lui*, to him, him.

Pl. N. A. *Eux*, they. them.
G. *d'eux*, of *or* from them.
D. *à eux*, to them, them.

Feminine.

S. N. A. *Elle*, she. her.
G. *d'elle*, of *or* from her.
D. *à elle*, to her.

Pl. N. A. *Elles*, they. them.
G. *d'elles*, of *or* from them.
D. *à elles*, to them.

Sing. and *Plur.* *Masc.* and *Fem.*

N. & A. *Soi*, one's self, itself, etc.
Gen. *de soi*, of *or* from one's self, etc.
Dat. *à soi*, to one's self, to itself, etc.

Examples.

Qui a dit cela? *Moi, lui, elle, nous. — Pas moi, etc.*
Who has said this? I, he, she, we, — Not I, etc.

C'est pour moi, — pour toi, — pour elle, etc.
That is for me, — for thee, — for her, etc.

Je parle de toi, de vous, d'elles, d'eux, etc.
I speak of thee, of you, of them, of them, etc.

Nous pensons à lui, à vous, à eux, etc.
We think of him, of you, of them, etc.

Remarks.

1) All these disjunctive pronouns may, in all cases, take *-même*, pl. *-mêmes*, whenever in English the word self is joined to a pronoun. Ex.:

S. *moi-même*, (I) myself.
toi-même, thyself.
lui-même, himself.
elle-même, herself.
soi-même, one's self.

Pl. *nous-mêmes*, ourselves.
vous-même, yourself.
vous-mêmes, yourselves.
eux-mêmes, *elles-mêmes*, themselves.

2) When stress is laid upon personal pronouns, they are often preceded by *c'est, c'était etc.*, as in English:

S. *c'est moi*, it is I.	Pl. *c'est nous*, it is we.
c'est toi, it is thou.	*c'est vous*, it is you.
c'est lui, it is he.	*ce sont eux* } it is they.
c'est elle, it is she.	*ce sont elles*, }

Interrog. *Est-ce moi?* Is it I? *Est-ce vous?* Is it you? etc.

3) *Soi* is only used of mankind in a general sense, and of inanimate objects in the singular. Ex.:

Doit-on toujours penser à soi? Ought one always to think of one's self?

Le thé, tea.	*avec*, with.
le café, coffee.	*entre*, between.
la bourse, purse.	*qui?* who?
la leçon, the lesson.	*ni — ni*, neither — nor.
le paysan, the peasant.	*sans*, without.
âgé, old.	

Exercise. 59.

1 Qui a fait ce bruit? 2 Moi, toi, lui. 3 Il parle de moi. 4 Donnez-lui de l'argent. 5 Il est plus âgé que moi. 6 Nous n'avons pas pensé à toi. 7 Ni moi ni lui. 8 Qui a de bon thé? 9 Elle, eux, elles. 10 Avec vous. 11 Entre nous. 12 Sans lui. 13 C'est moi. 14 Qui a perdu cette bourse? 15 Elle. 16 Mon père et moi nous avons vu ce chien.

Exercise. 60.

17 Who has done that? 18 I, he, she. 19 John is older than we. 20 Do not always think of yourself. 21 Does your cousin live with you? 22 Yes, he lives with us. 23 Who is this man? 24 Has John finished his exercise? 25 Is his lesson easy? 26 Did you like the coffee? 27 My brother and I have bought a large house. 28 Did he speak of me or (*ou*) of you? 29 He spoke of her. 30 Who is there (*là*)? 31 It is I, we. 32 Is it you, John? 33 We have eaten the fruit ourselves. 34 This hat is for her. 35 Neither you nor I.

LESSON XXXI.

Conjunctive personal Pronouns.

These are declined as follows:

	1st Person.		2nd Person.	
S. N.	*Je*, I.	Pl. *nous*, we.	S. *Tu*, thou.	Pl. *vous*, you.
G.	(wanting).		— —	— —
D.	*me*, (to) me.	*nous*, (to) us.	*te*, (to) thee.	*vous*, (to) you.
A.	*me*, me.	*nous*, us.	*te*, thee	*vous*, you.

3rd Person.

	Masc.		*Fem.*	
S. N.	*Il*, he.	Pl. *ils*, they.	S. *Elle*, she.	Pl. *elles*, they.
G.	(*en*), of him.	(*eu*), of them.	(*en*), of her.	(*en*), of them.
D.	*lui*, (to) him.	*leur*, to them.	*lui*, (to) her.	*leur*, to them.
A.	*le*, him, it.	*les*, them.	*la*, her, it.	*les*, them.

Masc. and *Fem.*

N. *on*, one, they, man.
D. *se*, to one's self, to themselves.
A. *se*, one's self, itself, themselves.

The difficulty in the use of the conjunctive personal pronouns is merely in their proper position. The principal rules are these:

A. With *one* pronoun.

1) The nominative cases *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* or *elles*, usually precede the verb of which they are the subject; in an interrogative sentence, however, they are placed immediately after the verb. Ex.:

je pense, I think. *nous parlons*, we speak.
tu espères, thou hopest. *vous jouez*, you play.

Interrog. *Finis-tu*, dost thou finish?
Joue-t-elle, does she play?
Parlez-vous français, do you speak French?

2) The dative and accusative are placed immediately before the verb in a simple tense, and before its auxiliary in a compound one. Ex.:

Tu me dis, you tell me.
Je vous donne, I give you.
Elle m'a répondu, she has answered me.
Charles nous a dit, Charles has told us.
Je les ai vus, I have seen them.

3) If the sentence is negative, *ne* is put directly after the subject before the governed pronoun, as:

Je ne vous donne pas, I do not give you.
Tu ne me connais pas, you do not know me.
Vous ne les avez pas vus, you have not seen them.
Elle ne m'a pas répondu, she has not answered me.
Charles ne nous avait pas dit, Charles had not told us.

4) In the interrogative form, the accusative or dative precedes; then follows the verb with its subject. If the question is a negative one, *ne* begins the sentence:

Me connaissez-vous, do you know me?
Me blâme-t-il, does he blame me?

Les vois-tu, do you see them?
Vous a-t-il répondu, has he answered you?
Ne vous a-t-il pas répondu, has he not answered you?

5) When the verb is in the Imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put after it, in French as in English. In this case *me* and *te* are changed into *moi* and *toi* for the dative and accusative. Ex.:

donnez-moi, give-me. *apportez-lui*, bring (to) him.
manges-les, eat them. *parlez-leur*, speak to them.

6) But when the Imperative is negative, the governed pronoun precedes the verb. Ex.:

Ne me donnez pas, do not give me.
Ne lui apportez pas, do not bring him.
Ne les mangez pas, do not eat them.
Ne leur parlez pas, do not speak to them.

B. With *two* pronouns.

1) When a verb, which is not in the Imperative affirmative, governs two pronouns, they are both placed immediately before the verb, so that the dative comes first, and the accusative follows. Ex.:

Je te le donne, I give it to thee (you).
Il me le donne, he gives it me.
Louis me la prête, Lewis lends it me.
Louis ne me la prête pas, Lewis does not lend it to me.
Il nous l'apporte, he brings it (to) us.
Nous les apportera-t-il? will he bring them to us?
Ne nous l'apportera-t-il pas? will he not bring it to us?
On vous le dira, they will tell (it) you.
On ne vous le dira pas, they will not tell (it to) you.

2) An exception to the foregoing rule are the two datives *lui* (to him, to her) and *leur* (to them), which always follow the other governed pronoun. Ex.:

Je le lui donne, I give it him *or* her.
Je ne le lui donne pas, I do not give it him.
Elle les lui donne, she gives them to him.
Elle ne le lui donne pas, she does not give it (to) him.
La lui donne-t-elle? does she give it him?
La leur donnera-t-il? will he give it to them?
Je ne la leur ai pas donné, I have not given it to them.
Pourquoi ne la leur prêtez-vous pas, why do you not lend it to them?

3) Of two personal pronouns governed by the Imperative affirmative the dative always stands last:

Donnez-le-moi, give it me.
Apportez-les-lui (*leur*), bring them to him (to them).
Prêtez-la-nous, lend it to us.

4) Is the Imperative negative, both of them precede the verb according to 6), (p. 73) and *lui* and *leur* follow the accusative according to *B*, § 2. Ex.:

Ne me le donnez pas, do not give it me.
Ne la lui apportez pas, do not bring it to him.
Ne les leur envoyez pas, do not send them to them.

Note. Observe that, inanimate things in French being either masculine or feminine, the pronouns *il*, *elle*, plur. *ils*, *elles*, Acc. *le*, *la*, are used accordingly in speaking of such. Thus, speaking of a flower or of flowers (*fleur*, *f.*), we say:

It is beautiful, *elle est belle.* I see it, *je la vois.*
They are beautiful, *elles sont belles.*

Exercise. 61.

1 Do they love him? 2 When shall you sell your houses? 3 We shall not sell them. 4 He does not know me. 5 We have seen you. 6 Will he not blame me? 7 I shall give you some money. 8 Did they answer us? 9 You will find him in our house. 10 Have your finished your lesson? 11 No, but I shall finish it this evening. 12 She would blame me. 13 We gave them ten francs. 14 I have not seen her. 15 Did you not hear him? 16 Has he forbidden it? 17 We have not written to her. 18 His brother will expect me to-morrow. 19 Speak to her. 20 Do not speak to them. 21 Give them some good wine. 22 Do not give him any wine. 23 Bring him a new hat. 24 Do not give her all the bread. 25 We have not seen them here.

Exercise. 62.

26 He will have given it to me. 27 We shall lend them to her. 28 I gave it to him. 29 We lent you them. 30 Will she have given it to them? 31 Would she not have given it to them? 32 Do not send them to him. 33 Is that rose beautiful? 34 Yes, it is very beautiful. 35 Why have you not lent it to them? 36 Has he given him these gloves? 37 Yes, he has given him them. 38 He has not given them to her. 39 He has lent me five francs. 40 I should not have given him all my money.

LESSON XXXII.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

	Masc.	*Fem.*
	Celui,	*celle*, this, that.
Pl.	*ceux*,	*celles*.

	Masc.	*Fem.*
	celui-ci,	*celle-ci,* this, the latter.
Pl.	*ceux-ci,*	*celles-ci,* these.
	celui-là,	*celle-là,* that (one), the former.
Pl.	*ceux-là,*	*celles-là,* those.

(*Celui qui* is rendered he who, the one which).

Ce, c' and *cela* (abridged *ça*), that; *ceci,* this.

NB. The pronouns he, she, — they, preceding a relative must be translated by *celui, celle, — ceux, celles.* Ex.: *celui qui,* he who, *celle qui,* she who, or that which; *ceux qui, celles qui,* they who, or those which.

1) These pronouns are used with the preposition *de,* instead of the English possessive case, when the governing noun is not expressed. Ex.:

Mon chapeau et celui de mon frère.
My hat and my brother's (that of my brother).

Je parle de celui-ci, vous parlez de celui-là.
I speak of this, you speak of that one.

2) *Ce, c'* (with the verb *être*) this or that; *ceci,* this, and *cela,* that, are a sort of neuter pronouns:

Est-ce là votre plume? is that your pen?
Oui, c'est ma plume, yes, this is my pen.
Sont-ce là vos gants? are these your gloves?
Ce sont mes gants, these are my gloves.
Je ne veux pas ceci, I do not want this.
Que dites-vous de cela? what do you say of that?

3) In place of the genitive and dative of *ce, ceci, cela, ceux-ci* and *ceux-là,* two other conjunctive pronouns, are used, viz. *en* and *y.*

a) *En* is rendered in English by some, of it, of them, about it, about them etc. Ex.:

Voici du jambon: en voulez-vous?
Here is ham, will you have some?

J'en prendrai un petit morceau.
I shall take a little bit of it.

Je lui en ai donné. I have given him some of them (it).

Donnez-m'en — donnez-lui-en.
Give me some — give him some.

b) *Y* corresponds to the English to it, to them, in it, in them, therein etc. Ex.:

Votre père est-il au jardin? — Oui, il y est.
Is your father in the garden? Yes, he is there.

J'y vais aussi, I shall go there, too.
Y pensez-vous? Do you think of that?

La visite, the visit.
le champ, field.
la couleur, the colour.
le mois, the month.
la vie, life.
voici, here is, here are.
presque, almost.
déjà, already.
frapper, to strike.
porter, to wear.

Exercise. 63.

1 Voici votre chapeau et celui de votre frère. 2 Il a sa montre et celle de son père. 3 Est-ce là votre bague ou celle de votre mère? 4 Ceux qui sont contents, sont toujours heureux. 5 Heureux celui qui trouve un vrai ami! 6 Ce qui est beau n'est pas toujours utile. 7 Celui qui a vendu ce champ, est riche. 8 Cet homme a fait une visite à notre voisin. 9 Aimez-vous la couleur de ces fleurs? 10 Nous l'aimons beaucoup. 11 La vie de l'homme est courte. 12 Nous avons vendu nos maisons au mois de mai. 13 Ma tante est-elle déjà ici? 14 Il porte un chapeau blanc. 15 Qui a frappé à cette porte (*door*)? 16 Presque tous ces hommes-ci ont perdu leur argent.

Exercise. 64.

17 My brother has lost his pen and his sister's. 18 They have lost my gloves and his. 19 I shall sell my house and my cousin's. 20 He who is diligent will have much pleasure. 21 This ink is blacker than that. 22 These hats are white, those are black. 23 Answer him who calls. 24 I shall give this watch to him who is diligent. 25 To whom do these boots belong? 26 They are my brother's. 27 I prefer the colour of this rose to that. 28 If (*si*) you have some good wine, bring me a bottle of it. 29 Have you thought of my gloves? 30 Yes, I have thought of them. 31 Were you in the garden? 32 Yes, I was there. 33 If you have any pears, give me some of them. 34 This is very beautiful. 35 Did you speak of this or of that? 36 We spoke neither of this nor of that. 37 Do not give him any.

LESSON XXXIII.

Interrogative Pronouns.

1) Lequel?

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*
N. & A.	Lequel?	laquelle?	lesquels?	lesquelles?
Gen.	duquel? de	laquelle?	desquels?	desquelles?
Dat.	auquel? à	laquelle?	auxquels?	auxquelles?

This pronoun is used either without a noun, or is at least separated from it by *de;* but it agrees with it in gender and number. When the pronoun which (of) is used interrogatively, it is always expressed by ***lequel, laquelle*** etc., as:

Voici deux appartements, lequel choisirez-vous?
Here are two apartments, which will you choose?
Une de ses sœurs est mariée. Laquelle (est-ce)?
One of his sisters is married. Which is it?
Laquelle de vos écolières est malade?
Which of your pupils is ill?

2) Qui? Quoi? Que?

	Masc. & Fem.	*Neuter.*
Nom.	*Qui,* who?	*Que, quoi,* what?
G. (Abl.)	*de qui,* whose, of whom, from whom?	*de quoi,* of what? from what?
Dat.	*à qui,* to whom, whom?	*à quoi,* to what, at what?
Acc.	*qui,* whom?	*que, quoi,* what?

1) The interrogative pronoun *qui?* is only used of persons. Ex.:

Qui est là? who is there?
A qui prêtez-vous cela? to whom do you lend this?
Qui cherchez-vous? whom are you looking for?
Pour qui est ce crayon? for whom is that pencil?

2) Whose, when used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui.* Ex.:

Whose book is this? ***à qui*** *est ce livre?*

3) *Que* and *quoi* are neuter. *Quoi,* what, is disjunctive and used either by itself, or after a preposition, as:

De quoi parlez-vous? of what are you speaking?
Sur quoi, upon what? *Avec quoi,* with what?

4) *Que?* what? is *conjunctive,* and is only used before verbs, as:

Que voulez-vous? what do you wish *or* want?
Que dit-on? what do people say?
Que demande-t-il? what does he ask?

La nation, the nation.
le chagrin, grief.
la forêt, forest.
l'armée, f. army.
la liberté, liberty.
malheureux, unhappy.
obéissant, obedient.
pas encore, not yet.

Exercise. 65.

1 Whose son is this? 2 With whom do you wish to speak? 3 Which of your pupils has received a present? 4 Here are two new books, which do you prefer? 5 Which of these two nations is the larger? 6 Who is there? 7 It is an English soldier. 8 To whom did you give this ring? 9 Of what were you speaking? 10 Which of these books have you read? 11 With what have you done that? 12 Which of his sisters has lost her book? 13 Which of your brothers has not yet finished his exercise? 14 Who is at the door? 15 Which army is it? 16 In what forests have you been? 17 Who does not love liberty? 18 Why were these children not obedient? 19 To which of these girls have you given a franc? 20 For whom is this new black coat? 21 What does this merchant sell? 22 Whom were they looking for? 23 To which girls have you lent my pens? 24 What book have you? 25 Why did this poor woman have so much grief?

LESSON XXXIV.

Possessive Pronouns.

1) The possessive pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives *mon, ton, son*, etc.

Masc.	*Fem.*
Le mien,	*la mienne,* mine (my own).
le tien,	*la tienne,* thine.
le sien,	*la sienne,* his, hers, its own.
le nôtre,	*la nôtre,* ours.
le vôtre,	*la vôtre,* yours.
le leur,	*la leur,* theirs.
Pl. *les miens,*	*les miennes.*
les nôtres	etc.

2) They agree in gender with the object possessed.

Examples.

J'ai ma montre, avez-vous la vôtre?
I have my watch, have you yours?
J'ai la mienne, I have mine.
Ma sœur a la sienne, my sister has hers.
Vos frères ont les leurs, your brothers have theirs.

Relative Pronouns.

The interrogative pronouns *qui, quoi* and *lequel* serve at the same time as relative pronouns, when they have a reference to some other noun or pronoun preceding.

The declension of *lequel* and *quoi* is the same as on p. 76—77. That of *qui*, when relative, differs slightly from that of the interrogative *qui?* viz.:

	Sing. and *Plur.* *Masc.* and *Fem.*
Nom.	*Qui*, who, which, that.
Gen.	*de qui* and *dont*, whose, of (from) whom, of which.
Dat.	*à qui*, to whom.
Acc.	*que*, whom, which, that.

3) The Nominative *qui* and the Accusative *que* are indiscriminately used of persons and things for both genders and numbers. Ex.:

Un enfant qui pleure, a child that cries.
La porte qui est ouverte, the door which is open.
Le voyayeur que j'ai quitté, the traveller whom I have left.
Le chapeau que j'ai acheté, the hat (which) I have bought.
Les maisons que vous avez vues, the houses (which) you have seen.

NB. The relative *que*, whom, which *or* that, is sometimes understood in English, but must always be expressed in French.

4) The Gen. *dont*, whose, of which, is used for persons and things of both genders and numbers; but *de qui*, from whom *or of* whom, which is sometimes required instead of *dont*, has only a reference to persons. Ex.:

L'homme — les hommes dont vous parlez.
The man — the men of whom you speak.

La lettre — les lettres dont vous parlez.
The letter — the letters of which you speak.

L'Anglais dont le fils est ici, the Englishman whose son is here.

Je connais la femme dont vous avez reçu la lettre.
I know the woman from whom you have received the letter.

NB. Observe that the noun which is limited by whose, must be preceded by the article. If the noun is the object of a verb, it must come after that verb, and not immediately after *dont*, as in English. Ex.:

Le livre dont je ne connais pas le titre (title).

5) The *Dative* to whom referring to persons, is rendered by *à qui*; but when animals or inanimate things are spoken of, the *Dative* to which is rendered by *auquel, à laquelle*, plur. *auxquels, auxquelles.* Ex.:

Voilà l'homme à qui j'ai prêté mon livre.
There is the man to whom I have lent my book.

C'est le chien auquel vous avez donné à manger.
That is the dog to which you gave to eat.

Voilà une occasion à laquelle je ne pensais pas.
There is an opportunity, I did not think of.

6) After prepositions, *qui* is employed of **persons**, *lequel*, *laquelle* of **things**. Ex:

Le marchand avec qui j'ai voyagé.
The merchant with whom I travelled. But:

L'arbre sur lequel (not *sur qui*) *je montai.*
The tree upon which I climbed.

La clef avec laquelle on ouvrit la porte.
The key with which they opened the door.

7) *Lequel*, *laquelle* etc. must also be used instead of *qui* in the Nominative, when the relative is separated from its noun by another substantive to which it might seem to relate. Ex.:

La tante de mon ami laquelle demeure à Paris.
My friend's aunt who lives at Paris.
(*Qui demeure à Paris* might relate to „*mon ami*").

8) **That which**, and **what**, meaning **that thing which**, are expressed by *ce qui* for the Nominative, and *ce que* for the Accusative. **All that** is rendered: Nom. *tout ce qui*, Acc. *tout ce que*. Ex.:

What renders men miserable, is cupidity.
Ce qui rend les hommes misérables, c'est la cupidité.

I like all that is fine, *j'aime tout ce qui est beau.*

Do what I tell you, *faites ce que je vous dis.*

Exercise. 66.

1 My brother is older than yours. 2 His sister is younger than mine. 3 John has lost his pens and ours. 4 Here is the man who has bought this house. 5 I have seen the garden which they have sold. 6 Our dogs are better than yours. 7 Here are our exercises, where are theirs? 8 The boy who laughed will be punished. 9 I have read your letter and his. 10 Where is your pen, and where is mine? 11 The man of whom you are speaking, is ill. 12 To whom did you sell this cloth?

LESSON XXXV.

Indefinite Pronouns.

These are used by themselves, without a noun substantive. They are:

on or *l'on*, one, they, people.
tout le monde, everybody.
chacun, f. *chacune*, each, every-one.
aucun, f. *aucune*, (with *ne*), none, not one.
quelqu'un, f. *quelqu'une*, some one, somebody, anybody.
pl. *quelques-uns*, f. *quelques-unes*, some.
personne (with *ne*), nobody.
l'un, e, — l'autre, the one —, the other.
pl. *les uns (unes), — les autres*, the one —, the others.
l'un (l'une) et l'autre, both.
l'un (l'une) ou l'autre, either.
ni l'un (l'une) ni l'autre, neither.
l'un (l'une) l'autre, Gen. *l'un de l'autre*, } each-other.
pl. *les uns (les unes), les autres*, } one another.
un autre, f. *une autre*, another.
d'autres, pl. others, other people.
autrui (Gen. *d'autrui*, Dat. *à autrui*), others, another.
tel, f. *telle*, many a (man).
plusieurs, several.
la plupart, most (with a following Genitive, as: *la plupart des hommes*, most men).
quiconque, whoever.
tout f. *toute*, all, everything.
pl. *tous, toutes*, all.
quelque chose, something, anything.
rien (with *ne*), nothing.
le, la même, the same.

Remarks.

1) *L'on* is employed instead of *on*, for the sake of euphony, after *et, si, ou, où* and sometimes after *que* and *mais*. Ex.:

si l'on voit, if one sees.

But *on* never takes an *l'*, when followed by *le, la* or *les*. Ex.:

si on le voit, not *si l'on le voit*.

2) Several of the indefinite numerals (see p. 44) have been enumerated here again among the indefinite pronouns, because they may be used as such, viz.: *aucun, plusieurs, tout* and *le même*. Ex.:

Combien de plumes avez-vous, how many pens have you?
Je n'en ai aucune, I have none.
J'en ai plusieurs, I have several.

Avez-vous appelé tous les enfants, have you called all the children?

Oui, je les ai appelés tous, yes, I have called them all.

8 When *personne* and *rien* are used by themselves, they cannot take *ne*, but retain their negative meaning, as:

Qui avez-vous rencontré? Personne.
Whom have you met? Nobody.

Rencontrer, to meet.	*difficile*, difficult.
chanter, to sing.	*l'envie*, f. envy.
la chanson, the song.	*fidèle*, faithful.
la voiture, the carriage.	*la famille*, the family.
loin, far.	*l'amitié*, f. friendship.

Exercise. 67.

1 Have you anything? 2 I have nothing. 3 Everybody likes this man. 4 Several of our friends are here. 5 Who sung that beautiful song? 6 Whom have you met? 7 We have met several of our pupils. 8 Nobody likes this boy. 9 Have they any horses? 10 They have sold all of them. 11 Was he there? 12 Yes, he was there. 13 These children love each other. 14 Which exercise is the most difficult? 15 Most men think of him. 16 How many friends has he? 17 He has none. 18 Some are too young, others are too old. 19 She has spoken of nobody. 20 Has he many friends? 21 He has a few. 22 I have seen nobody. 23 In this world the one is rich, the other poor, and nobody is contented with *(de)* what he has. 24 Why were they jealous of each other? 25 Has anybody been here? 26 Give me a few of those beautiful apples. 27 What are they doing there? 28 This master does not know all the pupils in the school, but he knows several of them. 29 One ought *(doit)* to be contented. 30 Whoever dirties his copy-book *(le cahier)*, will be punished. 31 Has he met anyone? 32 Have you seen those two boys? 33 I have seen neither of them.

Exercise. 68.

34 Have you seen our new carriage? 35 I have not seen it. 36 I shall give them them. 37 Is his uncle far from here? 38 Give me that letter. 39 I shall not give you it. 40 Who is there? 41 It is I. 42 It is she. 43 It is they. 44 Does he love them? 45 He loves nobody. 46 Here is a present for you and your sister. 47 The envy of this man is great. 48 Is this dog faithful? 49 Have you seen the whole family? 50 We have seen him ourselves. 51 Which of these books have you read? 52 Whose hat is this? 53 To whom did they give that inkstand? 54 I have lost my watch and my brother's. 55 What is the name of this child? 56 Is this your pen? 57 It is not mine, it is hers. 58 The boy whom we love, is ill. 59 Here are two roses. 60 Which of them will you have? 61 We have not seen the garden which you have sold. 62 That which

is beautiful, is not always good. 1 I shall give this book to him. 2 Who is the most diligent? 3 These girls do not love each other.

LESSON XXXVI.

Exercise. 69.

4 How many trees are there in this garden? 5 There are 19. 6 Does he speak English or French? 7 He speaks neither. 8 Is this wine old? 9 How old is your father? 10 He is 52. 11 In what year did you see (have seen) the queen? 12 I saw her in August 1867. 13 Has this merchant many children? 14 He has 8, 5 sons and 3 daughters. 15 We have bought several yards of black cloth from this tailor. 16 John is the 3rd in this class; 17 William is the last. 18 This water is fresher than that. 19 This hat is better than yours. 20 Did they not speak to the queen? 21 They have not spoken to her. 22 How many horses shall you buy? 23 I shall buy three. 24 Have these children lost their playthings? 25 Yes, they have lost them. 26 Did not our ancestors build those beautiful castles? 27 Have you read the works of Milton? 28 We have read some of them. 29 All these soldiers have fulfilled their duties. 30 When are the days the shortest? 31 You will lose your whole fortune. 32 This man is taller than that. 33 Give them some cold water. 34 Is there any oil in that bottle? 35 We have given him some money. 36 When will she sing this song?

Exercise. 70.

37 These children are always throwing stones. 38 Was there not too much water in that bottle? 39 I have as many friends as you. 40 You have made too many mistakes. 41 Has he no money? 42 Yes, he has money enough. 43 Their sister's friend will build a beautiful house in this town. 44 This man has a new silk hat. 45 I have received something from him 46 What have you received? 47 I have received a gold ring. 48 Where did he lose his purse? 49 Have they not been to Francfort? 50 Which is the larger country, Germany or France? 51 I am going to America to-morrow. 52 In summer we shall live in Paris. 53 He knows that *(que)* I have not seen her. 54 Be diligent, my children! 55 I am younger than his brother. 56 Are the windows in this house large? 57 You lose too much time.

Exercise. 71.

58 I am not idle. 59 She is not idle. 60 Why was she not happy? 61 This tree is very old. 62 What o'clock is it? 63 It is a quarter past seven. 64 His sister and her father are in the garden. 65 80 days. 66 The seventeenth of February 1871 67 When shall I have my book? 68 On Wednesday. 69 How many weeks are there in a year? 70 The inhabitants of this town are very poor. 71 What

day of the month is it to-day? To-day is the 25th. All the men are here. Is that orange bitter? No *(non)*, it is very sweet. The life of man is short. Do you like white wine? Yes, I like it. Is your exercise easy or difficult? It is not difficult. These women are old. Has he a black coat? Yes, he has one.

LESSON XXXVII.

Exercise. 72.

Did they not give him good advice? We have seen several large vessels. How much does this coffee cost? It costs three francs. I have lost my dear friend. Was he a brave man? He was a very good man. A mean man is always discontented. This pen is better than that. He is happier than I. These men are not as rich as you. Where do we find the highest mountains? His youngest brother has received a beautiful present. Is it prettier than mine? It is prettier than yours. We have eaten some good butter. Would they not buy a large house? They have not any money. This merchant employs many men. Do not eat these pears; they are bad. I think of you. Do not look at him. You have dirtied your hat. Are these cherries fresh? Yes, they are fresh. I prefer these pens to those. When shall you finish your exercise? I shall finish it in a half an hour. They were building a church in this street. Why do they build here? Here are two pens; which of them will you choose? We were laughing. Do not laugh. With what did he beat that dog? Have you answered his letter? Yes, I have answered it. You will lose everything.

Exercise. 73.

Have they concluded peace? The tailor is waiting for you. I heard a great noise. Will these soldiers defend the town? Is it you, John? Which do you prefer tea or coffee? I neither drink *(bois)* tea nor coffee. Who speaks of me? I speak of you. Speak to them. Do not speak to them. Will he not give those books to us? He will give them to you. Send him three pounds of cherries. Do they like this beer? No, they do not like it. This book is mine, that is yours. Is that your pen? No, it is hers. Do you like the colour of this cloth? Yes, I like it. Whose pen is this? It is mine. Of what shall I speak? Speak of him. How many soldiers are there in this army? There are 90,000. Have you seen the merchant with whom I travelled? I have not seen him. To which of his daughters did you give a franc? To

which of these two boys have you given a book? 1 I have given a book to neither of them. 2 We thought of our friends who were in Paris. 3 Give a few of these cherries to those children. 4 Do not give any to them. 5 They are not as diligent as our neighbour's children.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Passive Verbs.

Passive verbs are formed, in French as in English, by joining the Participle past of an active verb to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be; for instance: of the verb *donner*, the passive voice is ***être donné***, to be given; of *finir*: ***être fini***, to be finished, etc. It is to be observed, that in French, the Participle past varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun which stands as the nominative to the verb.

Conjugation of a passive Verb.

Infinitive Mood.

Être loué, to be praised.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je suis loué or *louée*, I am praised.
tu es loué or *louée*, thou art praised.
il est loué, he is praised.
elle est louée, she is praised.
nous sommes loués or *louées*, we are praised.
vous êtes loués or *louées*, you are praised.
ils sont loués, } they are praised.
elles sont louées, }

Imperfect.

J'étais loué or *louée*, I was praised.
tu étais loué or *louée*, etc.
il était loué, etc.
elle était louée, etc.

Preterite.

Je fus loué or *louée*, I was praised, etc.

1st Future.

Je serai loué or *louée*, I shall be praised, etc.

1st Conditional.

Je serais loué or *louée*, I should be praised, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Sois loué or *louée*, be praised.
soyons loués or *louées*, let us be praised.
soyez loué or *louée*, be praised.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je sois loué or *louée*, that I (may) be praised, etc.

Imperfect.

Que je fusse loué or *louée*, that I (might) be praised, etc.

Participle.

Étant loué or *louée*, being praised.

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood.

Avoir été loué, e, to have been praised.

Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

J'ai été loué, e, I have been praised.
tu as été loué, e, thou hast been praised, etc.

Pluperfect.

J'avais été loué, e, I had been praised, etc.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus été loué, e, I had been praised, etc.

2nd Future.

J'aurai été loué, e, I shall have been praised, etc.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais été loué, e, I should *or* I would have been praised, etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Que j'aie été loué, e, that I (may) have been praised, etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse été loué, e, that I (might) have been praised.

Participle. Past.

Ayant été loué, e, having been praised.

Remark.

The English preposition by, with the passive voice, is to be rendered by *de,* when the verb denotes a sentiment or an inward act of soul, and by *par,* when it expresses an outward action, which is mostly the case. Ex.:

He is esteemed by everybody.
Il est estimé de tout le monde.

The city of Troy was taken by the Greeks.
La ville de Troie fut prise par les Grecs.

Neuter or intransitive Verbs.

Among the neuter verbs there are some which take *être* in the compound tenses instead of *avoir*. Ex.: *être arrivé*, to have arrived. These are conjugated as follows.

Pres.	J'arrive.	*Fut.*	J'arriverai.
Imperf.	J'arrivais.	*Cond.*	J'arriverais.
Pret.	J'arrivai.		

Perfect.

Je suis arrivé or *arrivée*, I have (am) arrived.
tu es arrivé or *arrivée*, etc.

Pluperfect.

J'étais arrivé or *arrivée*, I had arrived, etc.

2nd Future.

Je serai arrivé or *arrivée*, I shall have (be) arrived, etc.

2nd Conditional.

Je serais arrivé or *arrivée*, I should have arrived, etc.

Such are: *être allé*, to have gone.
être sorti, to have gone out.
être tombé, to have fallen.
être venu, to have come.
être resté, to have remained.

Tuer, to kill.	*le bal*, the ball.
inviter, to invite.	*démolir*, to demolish.
blesser, to wound.	*la bataille*, the battle.

maltraiter, to ill-treat.

Exercise. 74.

/ Cette fille est louée de tout le monde. 2 Dix mille soldats furent tués dans cette bataille. 3 Ces maisons sont démolies. 4 Par qui avez-vous été maltraité? 5 J'ai été maltraité par cet homme-là. 6 J'ai été invité au bal; ma sœur eût été invitée aussi, si elle n'était pas malade. 7 La maison qui a été démolie, a été rebâtie *(rebuilt)*. 8 Vos amis sont-ils arrivés? 9 Nous sommes restés à la maison *(at home)*.

Exercise. 75.

/0 My sisters stayed at home. // How many soldiers were killed in that battle? /2 Will your brothers be invited to the

ball? The young man whom you praised, has gone to Italy. When did your sisters come? Why did your brother not stay at home? Many soldiers were wounded by the enemy. This little boy was ill-treated by his father. The pupils were praised by their master. This girl is esteemed by everybody. My aunt has fallen. This king was loved by his soldiers. By whom were these houses sold? They were sold by the rich merchant who lives in our street. These poor men have been wounded. They will not yet have arrived. We should not have been praised. These houses will be rebuilt.

LESSON XXXIX.

Reflective Verbs.

These verbs are called reflective or reflected because their subject and object are the same person or thing, so that the subject acts upon itself, and is, at the same time, the agent and the object of the action. Reflected verbs, therefore, have always, besides the subject, another personal pronoun, viz. *me, te, se,* (myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself) for the singular; *nous, vous, se,* (ourselves, yourselves, themselves) for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is only implied, whereas it must be expressed in French. Ex.: to repent, *se repentir;* Pres. I repent, *je me repens,* etc.

Observe that all reflected verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, as: I have hurt myself, *je me suis blessé,* and not: *je m'ai blessé.*

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected verbs.

Se réjouir, to rejoice.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je me réjouis, I rejoice.
tu te réjouis, thou rejoicest.
il (elle) se réjouit, he (she) rejoices.
nous nous réjouissons, we rejoice.
vous vous réjouissez, you rejoice.
ils (elles) se réjouissent, they rejoice.

Imperfect.

Je me réjouissais, I rejoiced, etc.

Preterite.

Je me réjouis, I rejoiced, etc.

1st Future.

Je me réjouirai, I shall rejoice, etc.

1st Conditional.

Je me réjouirais, I should rejoice, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Réjouis-toi, rejoice.
réjouissons-nous, let us rejoice.
réjouissez-vous, rejoice.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je me réjouisse, that I (may) rejoice, etc.

Imperfect.

Que je me réjouisse, that I (might) rejoice, etc.

Participle.

Se (me, te etc.) réjouissant, rejoicing.

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood.

***S'être réjoui**, e,* to have rejoiced.

Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

*Je me **suis** réjoui, e,* I have rejoiced.
*tu t'**es** réjoui, e,* thou hast rejoiced.
*il s'**est** réjoui,* he has rejoiced.
*elle s'**est** réjouie,* she has rejoiced.
*nous nous **sommes** réjouis, ies,* we have rejoiced.
*vous vous **êtes** réjoui(s), ie(s),* you have rejoiced.
*ils se **sont** réjouis,* / *elles se **sont** réjouies,* they have rejoiced.

Pluperfect.

*Je m'**étais** réjoui, e,* I had rejoiced.
*tu t'**étais** réjoui, e,* thou hadst rejoiced, etc.

Compound of the Preterite.

*Je me **fus** réjoui, e,* I had rejoiced.
*tu te **fus** réjoui, e,* etc.

2nd Future.

*Je me **serai** réjoui, é,* I shall have rejoiced.
*tu te **seras** réjoui, e,* etc.

2nd Conditional.

*Je me **serais** réjoui, e,* I should have rejoiced.
*tu te **serais** réjoui, e,* etc.

Second compound of the Preterite.

*Si je me **fusse** réjoui, e,* if I had rejoiced, etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

*Que je me **sois** réjoui, e,* that I (may) have rejoiced.
*que tu te **sois** réjoui, e,* etc.
*qu'il se **soit** réjoui (qu'elle se **soit** réjouie),* etc.

Pluperfect.

*Que je me **fusse** réjoui, e,* that I (might) have rejoi
*que tu te **fusses** réjoui, e,* etc.

Participle.

*S'**étant** (m'**étant** etc.), réjoui, e,* having rejoiced.

With interrogation.

Present.

Me réjouis-je (better: *est-ce que je me réjouis*), do I rejoi
te réjouis-tu (or *est-ce que tu te réjouis*), dost thou rejoi
se réjouit-il (or *est-ce qu'il se réjouit*)? etc.
nous réjouissons-nous? etc. etc.
vous réjouissez-vous? etc.
se réjouissent-ils (-elles)? etc.

Perfect.

Me suis-je réjoui, e, have I rejoiced?
t'es-tu réjoui, e, hast thou rejoiced?
s'est-il réjoui, has he rejoiced?
nous sommes-nous réjouis, ies, have we rejoiced?
vous êtes-vous réjoui(s), ie(s), have you rejoiced?
se sont-ils réjouis, / *se sont-elles réjouies,* have they rejoiced?

With negation.

Present.

Je ne me réjouis pas, I do not rejoice.
tu ne te réjouis pas, etc.
il (elle) ne se réjouit pas, etc.
nous ne nous réjouissons pas, etc.
vous ne vous réjouissez pas, etc.
ils (elles) ne se réjouissent pas.

Imperative.

Ne te réjouis pas, do not rejoice.
ne nous réjouissons pas, let us not rejoice.
ne vous réjouissez pas, do not rejoice.

Perfect.

Je ne me suis pas réjoui, e, I have not rejoiced.
tu ne t'es pas réjoui, e, etc.
il (elle) ne s'est pas réjoui, e, etc.
nous ne nous sommes pas réjouis, ies, etc.
vous ne vous êtes pas réjoui(s), ie(s) etc.
ils (elles) ne se sont pas réjouis, ies, etc.

Infinitive.

Ne pas se réjouir, not to rejoice.
ne pas s'être réjoui, e, not to have rejoiced.

With negation and interrogation.

Present.

Ne me réjouis-je pas? or / *Est-ce que je ne me réjouis pas?* do I not rejoice?
ne te réjouis-tu pas? dost thou not rejoice?
ne se réjouit-il pas? does he not rejoice? etc.

Perfect.

Ne me suis-je pas réjoui, e? have I not rejoiced?
ne t'es-tu pas réjoui, e? etc.
ne s'est-il (-elle) pas réjoui, e? etc.
ne nous sommes-nous pas réjouis, ies? etc.
ne vous êtes-vous pas réjoui(s), ie(s)? etc.
ne se sont-ils (-elles) pas réjouis, ies? etc.

Remarks.

A great many verbs having no pronouns in English, are reflected in French. The following are the most used:

a) *Regular reflective Verbs of the 1st Conj.*

S'affliger, to be sorry.
s'approcher, to come near.
s'arrêter, to stop.
se baisser, so stoop.
se coucher, to go to bed.
se dépêcher, to make haste.
s'écrier, to exclaim, cry out.
s'enrhumer, to catch cold.
s'étonner, to wonder.
s'éveiller, to awake.
se fier, to trust.
se figurer, / *s'imaginer*, to fancy. to imagine.
se hâter, to make haste.
se lever, to rise, to get up.
se marier, to marry.
se moquer, to mock, scoff.
se promener, to take a walk.
se reposer, to rest.
se soucier, to care.
se tromper, to be mistaken.
se vanter, to boast.

b) *Irregular reflective Verbs.*

S'apercevoir, to perceive.	*se plaindre*, to complain.
s'asseoir, to sit down.	*se repentir*, to repent.
s'en aller, to go away.	*se soumettre*, to submit.
s'endormir, to fall asleep.	*se souvenir*, to remember.
s'entretenir, to discourse with.	*se taire*, to be silent.

Examples.

I rise, I get up, *je me lève.* — Get up, *levez-vous!*
I have risen *or* got up, *je me suis levé.*
We have stopped, *nous nous sommes arrêtés, etc.*

2) Observe also these expressions:

How are you? *comment vous portez-vous?*
I am well, *je me porte bien.*
I am mistaken, *je me trompe.*
I have been mistaken, *je me suis trompé.*
He is silent, *il se tait.* Be still! *taisez-vous!*

Exercise. 76.

1 We get up at 7 o'clock. 2 We used to get up at a quarter to 8. 3 These men were rejoicing. 4 Did she not rejoice? 5 At what o'clock will they go to bed? 6 His brothers are mistaken. 7 Make haste. 8 When will they be married? 9 They would have been married yesterday. 10 I shall catch cold. 11 They will have caught cold. 12 Charles has wounded himself with a penknife. 13 Shall we not take a walk in the garden? 14 They had not taken a walk. 15 She has been mistaken. 16 You were mistaken. 17 Why does he boast? 18 Your sisters will rejoice. 19 They will not make haste. 20 You are always imagining something.

LESSON XL.

Impersonal Verbs.

§ 1. There are some verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which are only conjugated in the third person singular. They are called **impersonal verbs.** The compound tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary *avoir.* Such are:

neiger, to snow;	Pres. *il neige*, it snows.
pleuvoir, to rain;	*il pleut*, it rains.
grêler, to hail;	*il grêle*, it hails.
tonner, to thunder;	*il tonne*, it thunders.
faire des éclairs, to lighten;	*il fait des éclairs*, it lightens.
geler, to freeze;	*il gèle*, it freezes.
dégeler, to thaw;	*il dégèle*, it thaws.
importer, to matter;	*il importe*, it matters.

§ 2. Several other verbs may become impersonal, when employed in the same manner. Ex.:

il suffit, it suffices.	*il convient*, it is convenient.
il semble, it seems.	*il arrive*, it happens.
il vaut mieux, it is better.	*il s'agit*, it is the question.
il me tarde, I long.	*il reste*, there remains, etc.

Models of Conjugation.

1) ***Neiger***, to snow.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.
Present.	*Il neige.*	*Qu'il neige.*
Imperfect.	*Il neigeait.*	*qu'il neigeât.*
Preterite.	*Il neigea.*	
Future.	*Il neigera.*	
Perfect.	*Il a neigé.*	*qu'il ait neigé.*
Pluperfect.	*Il avait neigé.*	*qu'il eût neigé.*
Comp. Pret.	*Il eut neigé.*	
2nd Future.	*Il aura neigé.*	

Interrogatively. *Neige-t-il? neigeait-il? a-t-il neigé? etc.*

Conditional.

Pres. *Il neigerait.* 2nd Cond. *Il aurait neigé.*

Participle.

Pres. *Neigeant.* Past. *Ayant neigé.*

---

2) ***Il y a***, there is, there are.

Infinitive Mood.

Y avoir, there to be.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	*Il y a*, there is, there are.
Imperfect.	*Il y avait*, there was, there were.
Preterite.	*Il y eut*, there was, there were.
Future.	*Il y aura*, there will be.
Perfect.	*Il y a eu*, there has *or* have been.
Pluperfect.	*Il y avait eu*, there had been.
Comp. Pret.	*Il y eut eu*, there had been.
1st Cond.	*Il y aurait*, there would be.
2nd Cond.	*Il y aurait eu*, there would have been.

Interrogatively. *Y a-t-il?* is there? are there?

Negatively. *Il n'y a pas*, there is *or* are not.

Negat. interrog. *N'y a-t-il pas?* is *or* are there not?

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	*Qu'il y ait,* that there (may) be.
Imperfect.	*Qu'il y eût,* that there (might) be.
Perfect.	*Qu'il y ait eu,* that there (may) have been.
Pluperfect.	*Qu'il y eût eu,* that there (might) have been.

Note 1. This verb in English is used in the *plural,* when followed by a plural substantive; in French, it remains always in the *singular,* as:

There are birds which etc., *il y a des oiseaux qui etc.*

Note 2. It often happens that the verb *il y a* is rendered „ago, these or for these." Ex.:

Il y a deux mois que je l'ai vu.
I saw him two months ago.

Il y a huit jours que je suis malade.
I have been ill these eight days (*or* this week).

---

3) *Il fait froid.*

Present.	*Il fait froid,* it is cold.
Imperfect.	*Il faisait froid,* } it was cold.
Preterite.	*Il fit froid,* } it was cold.
Future.	*Il fera froid,* it will be cold, etc.
Perfect.	*Il a fait froid,* it has been cold, etc.

Thus: *il fait chaud,* it is warm; *il fait jour,* it is day-light.
The English „*it is said*" is rendered in French: *on dit.*

---

4) *Il faut.*

Infinitive Mood.

Falloir, to be needful, necessary, must.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	*Il faut,* it is necessary.
Imperfect.	*Il fallait,* } it was necessary.
Preterite.	*Il fallut,* } it was necessary.
1st Future.	*Il faudra,* it will be necessary.
Perfect.	*Il a fallu,* it has been necessary.
Pluperferct.	*Il avait fallu,* } it had been necessary.
Comp. Pret.	*Il eut fallu,* } it had been necessary.
2nd Future.	*Il aura fallu,* it will have been necessary.
1st Cond.	*Il faudrait,* it would be necessary, (... ought to).
2nd Cond.	*Il aurait fallu,* it would have been necessary.

Interrogatively. ***Faut-il? fallait-il? fallut-il? a-t-il fallu?*** (Is it necessary? was it necessary? has it been necessary?)

Subjunctive Mood.

s. *Qu'il faille,* that it (may) be necessary.
pf. *Qu'il fallût,* that it (might) be necessary.
f. *Qu'il ait fallu,* that it (may) have been necessary.
pf. *Qu'il eût fallu,* that it (might) have been necessary.

Participle.

s. wanting. Past. *Ayant fallu.*

Remarks.

) The learner must observe that the above verb *falloir* absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses. When its ject is a personal pronoun, as: I must, you must, etc., may add for the first person *me,* for the second *te,* for the d *lui,* in the plural *nous, vous, leur.* More frequently rever, *que* with the Subjunctive mood is preferred. Ex.:
s. I must read: *il me faut lire* or *il faut que je lise.*
thou must read: *il te faut lire* or *il faut que tu lises.*
he must read: } *il lui faut lire* or { *il faut qu'il lise.*
she must read: } { *il faut qu'elle lise.*
we must read: *il nous faut lire* or *il faut que nous lisions.*
you must read: *il vous faut lire* or *il faut que vous lisiez.*
they must read: *il leur faut lire* or *il faut qu'ils lisent.*
f. I have been obliged to read: *il m'a fallu lire, etc.*

) When the subject is a noun, *que* with the Subjunctive d must be used. It must further be observed that, when verb *falloir* is used in the Present or Future tense, the owing verb must be put in the Present of the Subjunc-; but when it stands in the Imperfect, Preterite or Con-onal, the verb following it, must be rendered by the Im-rfect of the Subjunctive. Ex.:

The boy must work, *il faut que le garçon travaille.*
The boy will be be obliged to work.
Il faudra que le garçon travaille.
The boy had to work, *il fallut que le garçon travaillât.*
The soldiers were obliged to retire.
Il fallait or *il fallut que les soldats se retirassent.*

) When the verb *il faut* is followed immediately by a noun stantive, it signifies to want, need; here also one of the nouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur,* according to tbe person, st be inserted. Ex.:

I want (must have) a hat, *il me faut un chapeau.*
He needs some money, *il lui faut de l'argent.*
We want some bread, *il nous faut du pain.*
I want another pen, *il me faut une autre plume.*
Did you want some books? *vous fallait-il des livres?*

Exercise. 77.

1 It has snowed. 2 It will thunder. 3 It was freezing this morning. 4 Does it lighten? 5 It will thaw to-morrow. 6 There will be many soldiers in that town. 7 There were many pupils in that class. 8 There would have been too many pupils in that class. 9 Was there anyone at home *(à la maison)*? 10 Was there no water in that bottle? 11 We commenced our lesson an hour ago. 12 She has been ill a week. 13 It is very warm to-day. 14 It is said that he will come. 15 It is said that *(que)* our soldiers would have lost many men. 16 Was it cold yesterday? 17 It will be very warm. 18 It was not day-light when *(lorsque)* they got up. 19 My brother must be very diligent. 20 I want a new book. 21 Will they want any books? 22 We were obliged to work. 23 We must finish our work before *(avant)* 6 o'clock. 24 What must he do? 25 There are streets in London, which are very long.

LESSON XLI.

The irregular Verbs.

Those verbs are commonly called irregular which deviate from the three regular conjugations. This deviation is of three kinds.

1) Such verbs as take the terminations corresponding to the ending of their Infinitive mood, but change their root. Ex.: of the verb *coudre*, to sew, the radical is ***coud-***; this final *d* is, in some persons and tenses, changed into *s*, for instance in the plural: *nous* ***cousons***, we sew. These are the easier ones, and are therefore put in the first class.

2) Verbs which preserve their radical syllable throughout unchanged, but take flexions that do not accord with the ending of their Infinitive. For instance the verb ***cour-ir***, to run, ending in ***-ir***, ought to take the flexions of the second conjugation *(finir)*. But this is not the case; it takes the flexions of the third conjugation *(vendre)*; the Present is not *je cour-is, tu couris*, etc., but *je* ***cours***, *tu* ***cours***, etc.; P. p. ***couru*** like ***vendu***. Verbs of this kind we assign to the second class.

3) A certain number of verbs offer both these anomalies at the same time; i. e. they undergo some changes in their root and are conjugated with other flexions than those corresponding with the ending of their Infini-

tive. For instance the verb ***mourir***, to die, ought, according to its Infinitive termination ***-ir***, to take the flexions of *finir*. This is not the case; it is in most tenses conjugated like *vendre*, and, besides, its root ***mour-*** is, in certain tenses and persons, changed into ***meur-***, as: Pres. *je* ***meurs***, *tu* ***meurs***, etc. Such verbs, to which also belong those ending in ***oir***, constitute the third class.

To facilitate the study of the irregular verbs, it is essential to distinguish the primitive tenses from the derived ones. The latter have generally a regular inflexion, whereas the former alone are subject to irregularity. As already mentioned, the primitive tenses are:

1) *the Infinitive mood;*
2) *the Participle present;*
3) *the Participle past;*
4) *the Present of the Indicative mood;*
5) *the Preterite (Passé défini).*

From these, the other tenses and moods are derived, as it is explained p. 56, § 3. The derivative tenses are formed regularly, and therefore seldom mentioned in the following list.

To aid the pupil's memory, the following hints will prove useful:

1) The present of the Subjunctive is sure to be found by dropping the final *nt* of the 3rd person plural Indicative, as: from *ils écrivent — que j'****écrive;*** from *ils prennent — que je* ***prenne;*** from *ils boivent — que je* ***boive.***

2) The plural of the Present Indicative, the Participle present and the Imperfect of the Indicative have the same radical, as: *nous* ***mourons***, we die, P. pr. ***mourant;*** Imperf. *je* ***mourais;*** — *nous* ***craignons;*** P. pr. ***craignant;*** Imperf. *je* ***craignais;*** — *nous* ***allons;*** P. pr. ***allant***; Imperf. *j'****allais, etc.***

3) The Future and Conditional are formed from the Infinitive; most of them are therefore regularly formed; the following however have an irregular formation, as: *je* ***courrai*** (instead of *courirai*), *je* ***mourrai***, *je* ***verrai***, *j'****enverrai***, *j'****acquerrai***, *je* ***pourrai***, *je* ***saurai***, *je* ***voudrai***, *il* ***faudra***, *je* ***viendrai***, *je* ***tiendrai***, *je* ***ferai*** and *j'****irai.***

4) When the Participle past ends with the sound of *i* (*i*, *is* or *it*), the Preterite generally ends in ***is***. Ex.: Part. p. ***sorti***, gone out; Pret. *je* ***sortis;*** — Part. p. ***dit***, said; Pret. *je* ***dis;*** — P. p. ***pris;*** taken; Pret. *je* ***pris, etc.***

5) But when the Participle past ends in *u*, the Preterite usually ends in *us*. Ex.: P. p. *cru*, believed; Pret. *je crus;* P. p. *lu*, read; Pret. *je lus;* — P. p. *connu*, known; Pret. *je connus, etc.*

A list of all the Irregular Verbs,

according

to the three Classes of irregularity.

First Class.

Containing the verbs in *-re* which take the corresponding terminations of the third conjugation like *vendre*, but whose radical is somewhat changed.

(1—7. Insertion of an *s*.)

·7 1) **Luire,** to shine. *Part. pres.* luisant. *Part. past.* ***lui.***
Pres. Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luisez, ils luisent. *Subj.* Que je luise. *Imperf.* Je luisais. *Pret.* wanting. *Fut.* Je luirai.

Conjugate in the same manner: ***reluire,*** to glitter.

·12 2) **Suffire,** to suffice. *P. pr.* suffisant. *P. p.* ***suffi.***
Pres. Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffisons, etc. *Subj.* Que je suffise. *Imperf.* Je suffisais. *Pret.* Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffîmes, etc. *Fut.* Je suffirai.

In the same manner: ***confire,*** to preserve, to pickle, and ***circoncire,*** to circumcise, except in the *Part. past.* The Participle of the former is *confit,* of the latter *circoncis*

9.10 3) **Nuire,** to hurt, injure, *P. pr.* nuisant. *P. p.* ***nui.***
Pres. Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nouisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent. *Subj.* Que je nuise. *Impf.* Je nuisais. *Pret.* Je nuisis. *Fut.* Je nuirai.

13 4) **Cuire,** to boil, to bake (bread). *P. pr.* cuisant. *P. p.* ***cuit.***
Pres. Je cuis, tu cuis, il cuit, nous cuisons, etc. *Pret.* Je cuisis. *Fut.* Je cuirai.

Thus also: ***recuire,*** to boil once more.

99.4/5 5) **Conduire,** to conduct, to lead. *P. pr.* conduisant. *P. p.* ***conduit.***
Pres. Je conduis, tu conduis, il conduit, nous conduisons, etc. *Pret.* Je conduisis. *Fut.* Je conduirai.

99.4 Thus: ***se conduire,*** to behave; ***reconduire,*** to reconduct, to see home; ***déduire,*** to deduct; ***enduire,*** to plaster;
14 ***induire,*** to lead into; ***introduire,*** to introduce; ***produire,*** to produce; ***reproduire,*** to produce again; ***réduire,*** to reduce; ***séduire,*** to seduce; ***traduire,*** to translate.

6) **Instruire,** to instruct. *P. p.* instruisant. *P. p.* ***instruit.***
Pres. J'instruis, tu instruis, il instruit, nous instruisons, vous instruisez, ils instruisent.
Pret. J'instruisis. *Fut.* J'instruirai.
In the same manner: ***construire,*** to build; ***détruire,*** to destroy.

7) **Dire,** to say, to tell. *P. pr.* disant. *P. p.* ***dit.***
Pres. Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous ***dites,*** ils disent.
Subj. Que je dise.
Pret. Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous dîmes, vous dîtes, ils dirent.
Imperf. Subj. Que je disse.
Fut. Je dirai. *Imper.* Dis, disons, ***dites.***
Conjugate in the same manner: ***redire,*** to say again, to object.
As for the other compounds of *dire,* viz.: ***contredire,*** to contradict; ***dédire,*** to unsay, and ***se dédire,*** to retract; ***interdire,*** to forbid; ***médire,*** to slander, and ***prédire,*** to foretell, they do not form their 2nd person plural of the Present Indicative with the termination ***-tes,*** but ***-sez,*** as: *vous contredisez, vous médisez, vous interdisez, etc.* — ***Maudire,*** to curse, takes ***ss*** in the following forms: Plur. *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent.* Part. pr. *maudissant.* Imparf. *je maudissais.*

Bien, well. *ancien,* ancient.
la dette, the debt. *prêt, -e,* ready.

Exercise. 78.

1 Tell me what you have seen. 2 I shall not tell you everything. 3 Did he not contradict me? 4 Has he behaved himself? 5 I shall translate this letter into English. 6 Introduce him to that lady. 7 The moon was shining. 8 He will instruct us. 9 Is it forbidden? 10 You would not hurt anybody. 11 I told him that *(que)* you were here. 12 All his fortune will not suffice to *(pour)* pay his debts. 13 Has she baked any bread? 14 I told him that you were ill. 15 Conduct him into the drawing-room *(le salon).* 16 He will instruct us. 17 Why did you not introduce him to us? 18 Tell him that I am ready.

LESSON XLII.

Irregular Verbs. First Class continued.

(8—17. Change of the final root-consonant.)

8) **Traire,** to milk. *P. pr.* trayant. *P. p.* ***trait.***
Pres. Je trais, tu trais, il trait, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient.

Imperf. Je trayais. *Pret.* wanting. *Fut.* Je trairai.
/- 101.7 Thus also: ***distraire,*** to distract; ***extraire,*** to extract; ***soustraire,*** to substract, to withdraw.

9) **Suivre,** to follow. *P. pr.* suivant. *P. p.* ***suivi.***
Pres. Je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez, ils suivent. *Subj.* Que je suive.
Pret. Je suivis, *Fut.* Je suivrai.
Imper. Suis, suivons, suivez.
Thus: ***poursuivre,*** to pursue; ***s'ensuivre,*** to ensue.

10) **Vaincre,** to conquer. *P. pr.* vainquant. *P. p.* ***vaincu.***
Pres. Je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.
Pret. Je vainquis. *Fut.* Je vaincrai.
Imper. Vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.
In the same manner: ***convaincre,*** to convince.

11) **Coudre,** to sew. *P. pr.* cousant. *P. p.* ***cousu.***
Pres. Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent. *Subj.* Que je couse.
Pret. Je cousis. *Fut.* Je coudrai.
Thus: ***découdre,*** to unsew; ***recoudre,*** to sew over again.

12) **Moudre,** to grind. *P. pr.* moulant. *P. p.* ***moulu.***
Pres. Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent. *Subj.* Que je moule.
Pret. Je moulus. *Fut.* Je moudrai.
In the same manner: ***émoudre,*** to grind (knives etc.), to sharpen, and ***remoudre,*** to grind again.

13) **Résoudre,** to resolve. *P. pr.* résolvant. *P. p.* ***résolu*** (or résout).
Pres. Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous ***résolvons,*** vous ***résolvez,*** ils résolvent. *Subj.* Que je ***résolve.***
Pret. Je résolus, tu résolus, etc.
Fut. Je résoudrai. *Imper.* Résous, ***résolvons, résolvez.***
Thus: ***absoudre,*** to absolve, and ***dissoudre,*** to dissolve.
These two compounds have no Preterite, and make their Participles: *absous,* f. *absoute,* and *dissous,* f. *dissoute.*

14) **Peindre,** to paint. *P. pr.* peignant. *P. p.* ***peint.***
Pres. Je peins, tu peins, il peint, nous peignons, vous peignez, ils peignent. *Subj.* Que je peigne.
Imperf. Je peignais.
Pret. Je peignis, tu peignis, il peignit, nous peignîmes, etc.
Fut. Je peindrai. *Imper.* Peins, peignons, peignez.
Thus: ***ceindre,*** to gird. ***Feindre,*** to feign; ***dépeindre,*** to depict. ***Teindre,*** to dye; ***déteindre,*** to discharge colour; ***atteindre,*** to attain, to reach; ***éteindre,*** to extinguish. ***Restreindre,*** to restrain. ***Enfreindre,*** to infringe, transgress.

15) **Craindre,** to fear. *P. pr.* craignant. *P. p.* ***craint.***
Pres. Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, etc.
Pret. Je craignis. *Fut.* Je craindrai, etc.
Thus also: ***plaindre,*** to pity; ***se plaindre,*** to complain; ***contraindre,*** to compel, to constrain.

16) **Joindre,** to join. *P. pr.* joignant. *P. p.* ***joint.***
Pres. Je joins, tu joins, il joint, nous joignons, vous joignez, ils joignent. *Subj.* Que je joigne.
Thus: ***rejoindre,*** to rejoin; ***enjoindre,*** to enjoin; ***disjoindre,*** to disjoin. ***Poindre,*** to dawn, break. ***Oindre,*** to anoint.

17) **Écrire,** to write. *P. pr.* écrivant. *P. p.* ***écrit.***
Pres. J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent. *Subj.* Que j'écrive.
Pret. J'écrivis, tu écrivis, il écrivit, etc.
Fut. J'écrirai. *Imper.* Écris, écrivons, écrivez.

1·101·24 Thus: ***décrire,*** to describe; ***circonscrire,*** to circumscribe; ***inscrire,*** to inscribe; ***prescrire,*** to prescribe, to order; ***récrire,*** to write again, to answer; ***souscrire,*** to subscribe; ***transcrire,*** to transcribe.

La vache, the cow.	*l'étude,* f. study.
le blé, the corn.	*la chandelle,* the candle.

Exercise. 79.

1 I am painting a picture. 2 He will paint. 3 Do not follow him. 4 You will not convince me. 5 He will pursue his studies in Paris. 6 He is grinding some corn. 7 She is distracted. 8 Milk that cow, John. 9 Will our soldiers conquer? 10 We followed him. 11 His sister was sewing in the drawing-room. 12 We are convinced. 13 Will they not milk those cows? 14 Shall we not follow you? 15 Have you sharpened these knives? 16 Have you extinguished the candle? 17 He was feigning. 18 They will complain. 19 Do not complain. 20 I am writing a long letter to his father who is in London. 21 She feared him. 22 We shall write to him to-morrow. 23 Why do you fear this man? 24 Describe that battle to us.

LESSON XLIII.

Irregular Verbs. First Class continued.

(18—26. The vowel of the root is changed into *u,* in the *Part. past* and *Preterite.*)

18) **Lire,** to read. *P. pr.* lisant. *P. p.* ***lu.***
Pres. Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent.
Pret. Je *lus,* tu lus, il lut, nous lûmes, vous lûtes, etc.

Imperf Subj. Que je lusse.
Fut. Je lirai, tu liras, il lira, etc.

Thus also: *élire*, to elect; *réélire*, to re-elect; *relire*, to read (over) again. *Imper. Relisez*, etc.

19) **Boire**, to drink. *P. pr.* ***buvant.*** *P. p.* ***bu.***
Pres. Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.
Subj. Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent.
Imperf. Je buvais.
Pret. Je *bus*, tu bus, il but, nous bûmes, vous bûtes, ils burent. *Fut.* Je boirai, tu boiras, etc.
Imper. Bois, buvons, buvez.

20) **Croire**, to believe, think. *P. pr.* ***croyant.*** *P. p.* ***cru.***
Pres. Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.
Subj. Que je croie, que tu croies, qu'il croie, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient.
Pret. Je *crus*, tu crus, il crut, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crurent. *Fut.* Je croirai, etc.

Thus also: *faire accroire qch. à qn.*, to make one believe. — NB. *Accroire* is used only in the Infinitive.

21) **Croître**, to grow. *P. pr.* ***croissant.*** *P. p.* ***crû.***
Pres. Je croîs, tu croîs, il croît, nous croissons, vous croissez, ils croissent.
Pret. Je *crûs*, tu crûs, il crût, nous crûmes, etc.
Fut. Je croîtrai.

Thus: *accroître*, to increase; *décroître*, to decrease; *recroître*, to grow again.

22) **Plaire**, to please. *P. pr.* plaisant. *P. p.* ***plu.***
Pres. Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent. *Subj.* Que je plaise, etc.
Pret. Je *plus*, tu plus, il plut, nous plûmes, vous plûtes, ils plurent. *Fut.* Je plairai, tu plairas, etc.

Thus: *se complaire*, to delight in . . .; *déplaire*, to displease. (*S'il vous plait* = if you please.)

23) **Taire**, to conceal. *P. pr.* taisant. *P. p.* ***tû.***
Pres. Je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, vous taisez, ils taisent.
Subj. Que je taise, que tu taises, qu'il taise, etc.
Pret. Je *tus*, tu tus, il tut, nous tûmes, vous tûtes, ils turent. *Fut.* Je tairai.

Thus: ***se taire***, to be silent. Pres. *Je me tais*, I am silent. Imper. *Tais-toi, taisez-vous.* Pret. *Je me tus*, I was silent. Comp of the Pres. *Je me suis tû*, I have been silent.

24) **Paraître,** to appear. *P. pr.* ***paraissant.*** *P. p.* ***paru.***
Pres. Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissons, vous paraissez, ils paraissent. *Subj.* Que je paraisse. *Pret.* Je *parus,* tu parus, il parut, etc. *Fut.* Je paraîtrai.

Thus: ***apparaître,*** to appear; ***comparaître,*** to appear before the judge; ***disparaître,*** to disappear; ***reparaître,*** to re-appear.

25) **Paître,** to graze. *P. pr.* paissant. *P. p.* ***pû.***
Pres. Je pais. Like *paraître,* but no *Pret.*

Thus: ***repaître,*** to feed, with the Pret. *Je repus.*

26) **Connaître,** to know. *P. pr.* connaissant. *P. p.* ***connu.***
Pres. Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, etc. *Imp.* Je connaissais.
Pret. Je *connus.* *Fut.* Je connaîtrai.

Thus: ***méconnaître,*** to mistake, not to acknowledge; ***reconnaître,*** to recognize, to know again, to acknowledge.

Souvent, often.	*le champ,* the field.
l'histoire, f. the history.	*la conduite,* the conduct.

Exercise. 80.

1 We shall read that book to-morrow. 2 Does he often read? 3 He was reading the works of Byron. 4 I shall drink a glass of wine with him. 5 Do you drink tea or coffee? 6 I drink neither. 7 They would have drunk some fresh water, but they had none. 8 I do not believe him. 9 Did she believe you? 10 I know that man very well. 11 We shall read the history of France. 12 Do not drink that water, it is not fresh. 13 Give him two francs, if you please. 14 The cows were grazing in the field. 15 Do you know him? 16 Be silent. 17 Did you recognize them? 18 They pleased us. 19 Read this book over again. 20 Why did you not read the history of England? 21 I have already read it. 22 What does he drink in summer? 23 They did not believe what I said. 24 Do you believe that his conduct was good? 25 I do not believe it.

LESSON XLIV.

Irregular Verbs. First Class continued.

27) **Faire,** to do, to make. *P. pr.* faisant. *P. p.* ***fait.***
Pres. Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous **faites,** ils **font.**
Pres. Subj. Que je *fasse,* que tu *fasses,* qu'il *fasse,* que nous *fassions,* que vous *fassiez,* qu'ils *fassent.*
Imperf. Je faisais, tu faisais, il faisait, etc.
Pret. Je *fis,* tu *fis,* il *fit,* nous *fîmes,* vous *fîtes,* ils *firent.*

Imperf. Subj. Que je *fisse*, que tu fisses, qu'il fît, que nous fissions, que vous fissiez, qu'ils fissent.

Fut. Je *ferai*, tu feras, etc. *Imper.* Fais, faisons, *faites.*

Conjugate in the same manner the compounds of *faire*, viz.: *défaire*, to undo, to loosen; *contrefaire*, to counterfeit; *refaire*, to do again; *satisfaire*, to satisfy; *surfaire*, to exact, charge too much, to overcharge.

28) **Mettre**, to put. *P. pr.* mettant. *P. p.* ***mis.***

Pres. Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent. *Pres. Subj.* Que je mette.

Imperf. Je mettais.

Pret. Je *mis*, tu *mis*, il *mit*, nous *mîmes*, vous *mîtes*, ils *mirent*. *Imperf. Subj.* Que je *misse*, que tu misses, qu'il mît, etc.

Fut. Je mettrai, tu mettras, etc.

Thus: *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *démettre*, to turn out; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit, to allow; *promettre*, to promise; *compromettre*, to compromise, to expose; *remettre*, to put again, to replace, to hand over; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit, to send.

Se mettre à signifies to begin, as: *l'enfant se mit à pleurer*, the child began crying.

29) **Prendre**, to take. *P. pr.* ***prenant.*** *P. p.* ***pris.***

Pres. Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent. *Pres. Subj.* Que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent. *Imperf.* Je prenais.

Pret. Je pris, tu pris, il prit, nous prîmes, vous prîtes, ils prirent. *Imperf. Subj.* Que je prisse.

Fut. Je prendrai. *Imper.* Prends, prenons, prenez.

Conjugate in the same manner the compounds of *prendre:* ***apprendre***, to learn; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *rapprendre*, to learn over again; ***comprendre***, to understand; ***entreprendre***, to undertake; *méprendre*, to mistake; *reprendre*, to take again, to reply, to chide; ***surprendre***, to surprise.

30) **Naître**, to be born. *P. pr.* ***naissant.*** *P. p.* ***né.***

Pres. Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent. *Imperf.* Je naissais.

Pret. Je *naquis* (I was born), tu *naquis*, il *naquit*, nous *naquîmes*, vous *naquîtes*, ils *naquirent.*

Fut. Je naîtrai, tu naîtras, etc.

Thus also: ***renaître***, to be born again.

31) **Vivre**, to live. *P. pr.* vivant. *P. p.* ***vécu.***

Pres. Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ils vivent. *Subj.* Que je vive; *hence the expressions:* Vive! *pl.* vivent! *long live! hail!*

Imper. Vis, vivons, vivez. *Imperf.* Je vivais.
Pret. Je *vécus,* tu *vécus,* il *vécut,* nous *vécûmes,* etc.
Fut. Je vivrai.

Thus also: ***survivre** (à qn.),* to survive; ***revivre,*** to revive.

La tasse, the cup. *le poisson,* the fish.
l'assiette, f. the plate.

Exercise. 81.

1 When were you born? 2 I was born on the 25th of October 1873. 3 What was he doing? 4 He was translating a book. 5 Have you done your exercise? 6 Yes, I have done it an hour ago. 7 I shall make several visits to-day. 8 Do not make so much noise, boys! 9 I shall take a lesson to-morrow. 10 Does he take tea? 11 Put this plate on the table. 12 Where has he put my gloves? 13 He has put them in your room. 14 Will they permit us to stay here? 15 Do you understand this man? 16 I understand him very well. 17 The children began to cry. 18 Where do fish live? 19 Fish live in water. 20 Long live the king!

LESSON XLV.

Irregular Verbs. Second Class.

Verbs ending in ***ir.***

(32—41. Verbs having the flexions of the 3rd Conjugation.)

32) **Fuir,** to shun, to flee. *P. pr.* fuyant. *P. p.* ***fui.***
Pres. Je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit, nous *fuyons,* vous fuyez, ils fuient. *Imperf.* Je fuyais.
Pret. Je fuis. *Fut.* Je fuirai.
Conjugate in the same manner: ***s'enfuir,*** to run away. Pres. *Je m'enfuis.* Comp. of the Pres. *Je me suis enfui,* I have run away.

33) **Vêtir,** to clothe. *P. pr.* vêtant. *P. p.* ***vêtu.***
Pres. Je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt, nous vêtons, etc.
Pret. Je vêtis. *Fut.* Je vêtirai.
Thus also: ***dévêtir,*** to divest; ***revêtir,*** to invest.

34) **Servir** (qn.), to serve, to help to. *P. pr.* servant. *P. p.* ***servi.***
Pres. Je *sers,* tu *sers,* il *sert,* nous servons, vous servez, ils servent. *Subj.* Que je serve.
Pret. Je servis. *Fut.* Je servirai.
Thus also: ***desservir,*** to clear the table; ***se servir,*** to make use of, to use.

35) **Dormir,** to sleep. *P. pr.* dormant. *P. p.* ***dormi.***

Pres. Je *dors*, tu *dors*, il *dort*, nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment. *Subj.* Que je dorme.
Pret. Je dormis, etc., like *servir*.

Thus: ***endormir***, to lull asleep; ***s'endormir***, to fall asleep; ***se rendormir***, to fall asleep again.

36) **Partir**, to set out, to leave. *P. pr.* partant. *P. p.* ***parti.***
Pres. Je *pars*, tu *pars*, il *part*, nous partons, etc., as *servir*. *Perf. Je suis parti.*

1-107-6 Thus: ***repartir***, to set off again, to reply. Not to be confounded with ***répartir***, to distribute, which is regular.

37) **Mentir**, to lie, tell a lie. *P. pr.* mentant. *P. p.* ***menti.***
Pres. Je *mens*, tu *mens*, il *ment*, nous mentons, etc., as *servir*.

Thus also: ***démentir***, to give the lie.

38) **Sentir**, to feel, to smell. *P. pr.* sentant. *P. p.* ***senti.***
Pres. Je *sens*, tu *sens*, il *sent*, nous sentons, etc., as *servir*.

Thus: ***consentir***, to consent; ***pressentir***, to foresee; ***ressentir***, to feel.

39) **Se repentir** de qch., to repent. *P. pr.* se repentant. *P. p.* ***repenti.***
Pres. Je me *repens*, I repent, etc., as *sentir*.

40) **Sortir**, to go out. *P. pr.* sortant. *P. p.* ***sorti.***
Pres. Je *sors*, tu *sors*, il *sort*, etc., as *servir*.

Thus: ***ressortir***, to go out again. ***Ressortir***, to resort, and ***assortir***, to assort, are regularly conjugated like ***finir***.

41) **Courir**, to run. *P. pr.* courant. *P. p.* ***couru.***
Pres. Je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent. *Subj.* Que je coure.
Pret. Je courus, tu courus, il courut, nous courûmes, vous courûtes, ils coururent.
Fut. Je *courrai*, tu courras, il courra, nous courrons, vous courrez, ils courront. *Imper.* Cours, courons, courez.

Thus: ***accourir***, to run to; ***concourir***, to compete; ***discourir***, to discourse; ***encourir***, to incur; ***parcourir***, to run over; ***recourir***, to have recourse; ***secourir***, to relieve.

42) **Cueillir**, to gather. *P. pr.* cueillant. *P. p.* ***cueilli.***
Pres. Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils cueillent. *Subj.* Que je cueille.
Pret. Je cueillis. *Imper.* Cueille, cueillons, cueillez.
Fut. Je cueillerai.

Thus: ***accueillir***, to receive; ***recueillir***, to gather.

43) **Offrir,** to offer. *P. pr.* offrant. *P. p.* ***offert.***
Pres. J'offre, tu offres, il offre, nous offrons, etc.
Pret. J'offris. *Imper.* Offre, offrons, offrez. *Fut.* J'offrirai.

44) **Souffrir,** to suffer. *P. pr.* souffrant. *P. p.* ***souffert.***
Pres. Je souffre, tu souffres, etc., like *offrir.*

45) **Ouvrir,** to open. *P. pr.* ouvrant. *P. p.* ***ouvert.***
Pres. J'ouvre, etc., as *offrir.*
Thus: ***rouvrir,*** to open again; ***entr'ouvrir,*** to open a little.

46) **Couvrir,** to cover. *P. pr.* couvrant. *P. p.* ***couvert.***
Thus: ***découvrir,*** to discover; ***recouvrir,*** to cover over.

47) **Tressaillir,** to startle. *P. pr.* tressaillant. *P. p.* ***tressailli.***
Pres. Je tressaille, tu tressailles, il tressaille, etc.
Pret. Je tressaillis, etc.
Fut. Je tressaillerai and je tressaillirai.
Thus: ***assaillir,*** to assault.

48) **Saillir,** to jut out, project. *P. pr.* saillant. *P. p.* ***sailli.***
Pres. 3rd pers. Il saille, *pl.* ils saillent, as *tressaillir;* but it is used only in the *3rd pers. sing.* and *plur.*
NB. ***Saillir*** = *(jaillir),* to gush, ir regular.

Cette nuit, last night. *la sottise,* the folly.
la convention, the agreement.

Exercise. 82.

1 We shall leave here to-morrow. 2 We slept well last night. 3 Clear the table. 4 You told him a lie. 5 We did not consent. 6 When shall you set off again? 7 The enemy flee. 8 They clothe the poor. 9 He shunned me. 10 Why did they run away? 11 I shall clothe this poor boy. 12 Shall you sleep in this bed? 13 The children have fallen asleep again. 14 Do not let them fall asleep. 15 Will he not repent his folly? 16 Open the window. 17 The window is open. 18 Did you offer them any money? 19 I offered them some, but they would not take it. 20 Let us gather these beautiful flowers. 21 Why does he run? 22 Will he consent to our agreement? 23 You startled us. 24 We shall run. 25 They would not run.

LESSON XLVI.

Irregular Verbs. Third Class.

(49—53. Verbs in *ir* changing their radical vowel and taking the flexions of the 3rd Conjugation.

49) **Mourir,** to die. *Part. pres.* mourant. *Part past. mort.*
Pres. Je *meurs,* tu *meurs,* il *meurt,* nous mourons, vous mourez, ils *meurent. Subj.* Que je *meure,* que tu *meures,* qu'il *meure,* que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils *meurent.*
Imper. Meurs, mourons, mourez.
Pret. Je mourus, tu mourus, il mourut, nous mourûmes, vous mourûtes, ils moururent.
Fut. Je mourrai, tu mourras, il mourra, etc.
Thus also: ***se mourir,*** to be near dying, to be fainting. Pres. *Je me meurs etc.*

50) **Bouillir,** to boil, *(neut. v.) P. pr.* bouillant. *P. p.* ***bouilli.***
Pres. Je *bous,* tu *bous,* il *bout,* nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils bouillent. *Subj.* Que je bouille.
Pret. Je bouillis. *Fut.* Je bouilllirai.
To boil, as an active verb, is rendered ***faire bouillir,*** as: to boil potatoes, *faire bouillir des pommes de terre.*

51) **Venir,** to come. *P. pr.* venant. *P. p.* ***venu.***
Pres. Je *viens,* tu viens, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent. *Pres. Subj.* Que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent. *Imperf.* Je venais.
Pret. Je *vins,* tu vins, il vint, nous vînmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent. *Imperf. Subj.* Que je *vinsse,* que tu vinsses, qu'il vînt, que nous vinssions, etc.
Perfect. Je ***suis*** venu, *I have come;* tu ***es*** venu, etc.
Fut. Je *viendrai,* tu viendras, etc. *Cond.* Je viendrais.
Imper. Viens, venons, venez.

NB. Venir de with an Infinitive mood forms idiomatic past tenses and corresponds to the English to have just. **Ex.:**

Je viens d'arriver, I have just arrived.
Elle vient de sortir, the has just gone out.

Conjugate in the same manner: ***convenir,*** to agree, to suit; ***devenir,*** to become; ***parvenir,*** to attain, to reach; ***prévenir,*** to be beforehand with, to inform; ***provenir,*** to arise, spring from, to proceed; ***se souvenir,*** to remember; ***subvenir,*** to relieve; ***revenir,*** to come back (again).

52) **Tenir,** to hold. *P. pr.* tenant. *P. p.* ***tenu.*** (Like ***venir***):
Pres. Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent. *Subj.* Que je tienne.

Pret. Je *tins*, tu tins, il tint, nous tînmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent. *Fut.* Je tiendrai.

Imper. *Tiens*, tenons, tenez.

Thus also: ***appartenir***, to belong; ***s'abstenir***, to abstain; ***contenir*** to contain; ***détenir***, to detain; ***entretenir***, to keep up; ***maintenir***, to maintain; ***obtenir***, to obtain; ***retenir***, to retain; ***soutenir***, to sustain, uphold, support.

53) **Acquérir**, to acquire. *P. pr.* acquérant. *P. p.* ***acquis***.

Pres. J'*acquiers*, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent. *Pres. Subj.* Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent.

Pret. J'acquis, tu acquis il acquit, nous acquîmes, vous acquîtes, ils acquirent. *Imperf. Subj.* Que j'acquisse.

Fut. J'*acquerrai*, tu acquerras, il acquerra, etc.

Imper. Acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

Conjugate in the manner: ***conquérir***, to conquer, P. passé ***conquis***. ***Reconquérir***, to conquer again; ***requérir***, to request, and ***s'enquérir***, to enquire. — ***Quérir***, to fetch, is used, in familiar conversation after ***aller***, ***venir***, ***envoyer***, as: ***allez quérir***, go and fetch.

Exercise. 83.

1 Henry VIII died in 1547. 2 Does the water boil? 3 We shall come to-morrow. 4 He has just arrived. 5 They had just gone out. 6 My father has come back from America. 7 She will die. 8 He is dead. 9 Boil these potatoes, if you please. 10 Come with us. 11 Do you remember him? 12 We maintained these poor children. 13 They held him. 14 This house belongs to that merchant. 15 Do not detain us. 16 Where did she obtain this book? 17 This hat suits you. 18 Will his father come back to-day? 19 This man has acquired a great name. 20 Will he become a great man?

LESSON XLVII.

Irregular Verbs. Third Class continued.

Verbs in *-oir*.

(54—66. Contraction of the root and the terminations. *Past. part.* and *Pret.* in **u**.)

54) **Devoir**, to owe, (ought to). *P. pr.* devant. *P. p.* ***dû***.

Pres. Je *dois*,*) tu *dois*, il *doit*, nous devons, vous devez, ils *doivent*. *Pres. Subj.* Que je *doive*. *Imp.* Je devais.

*) Je dois, followed by a verb, corresponds to the English: *I am to, I must.*

Pret. Je dus, tu dus, il dut, nous dûmes, vous dûtes, ils durent. *Imperf. Subj.* Que je dusse.
Fut. Je devrai, tu devras, etc. *Cond.* Je devrais.*)

55) **Recevoir,** to receive. *P. pr.* recevant. *P. p.* ***reçu.***
Pres. Je *reçois,* tu *reçois,* il *reçoit,* nous recevons, vous recevez, ils reçoivent.
Pret. Je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçûrent.
Fut. Je recevrai, tu recevras, il recevra, etc.
Thus also: ***décevoir,*** to deceive; ***apercevoir,*** to perceive; ***concevoir,*** to conceive; ***percevoir,*** to collect (money).

56) **Déchoir,** to decay. (No *Part. pres.*). *P. p.* ***déchu.***
Pres. Je *déchois,* tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient. *Subj.* Que je déchoie.
Pret. Je déchus, tu déchus, il déchut, nous déchûmes, vous déchûtes, ils déchurent.
Fut. Je décherrai, tu décherras, il décherra, nous décherrons, vous décherrez, ils décherront.
Thus: ***échoir,*** to fall to, to expire; P. pr. *échéant;* P. p. *échu.* It is now only used in the 3rd pers. sing.: *il* or *elle échoit, il échut, etc.* ***Choir*** is only used in the Infinitive mood.

57) **Falloir,** to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given p. 94.
Pres. Il *faut.* *Imperf.* Il fallait, etc.

58) **Mouvoir,** to move. *P. pr.* mouvant. *P. p.* ***mu.***
Pres. Je *meus,* tu *meus,* il *meut,* nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils *meuvent.* *Subj.* Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.
Pret. Je mus, tu mus, il mut, nous mûmes, vous mûtes ils murent. *Fut.* Je mouvrai.
Thus also: ***émouvir,*** to move, to excite, stir up; ***s'émouvoir,*** to be moved, affected.

59) **Pleuvoir,** to rain *(impers.).* *P. pr.* pleuvant. *P. p.* ***plu.***
Pres. Il pleut. *Subj.* Qu'il pleuve. *Imperf.* Il pleuvait.
Pret. Il plut. *Subj. Imperf.* Qu'il plût. *Fut.* Il pleuvra.

60) **Pourvoir,****) to provide. *P. pr.* pourvoyant. *P. p.* ***pourvu.***
Pres. Je *pourvois,* tu pourvois, il pourvoit, nous pourvoyons, vous pourvoyez, ils pourvoient.
Thus: ***prévoir,*** to foresee, which has in the Pret.: ***je prévis.***

---

*) Je devrais = *I ought to, I should.*
**) like 65) Voir, except the *Pret.* and *Fut.*

61) **Pouvoir,** to be able. *P. pr.* pou ant. *P. p.* ***pu.***
Pret. Je *peux* (or je *puis*)*), tu *peux,* il *peut, nous* pouvons, vous pouvez, ils *peuvent. Pres. Subj.* Que je *puisse,* que tu *puisses,* qu'il *puisse,* que nous *puissions,* que vous *puissiez,* qu'ils *puissent. Imperf.* Je pouvais.
Pret. Je pus, tu pus, il put, nous pûmes, vous pûtes, ils purent. *Imperf Subj.* Que je *pusse.*
Fut. Je *pourrai,* tu pourras, il pourra, nous pourrons, vous pourrez, ils pourront. *Cond.* Je pourrais.

Note. May, expressing a wish, is rendered by the Present tense of the Subjunctive. Ex.: *Puisse-t-il être heureux,* may he be happy!

62) **Savoir,** to know. *P. pr.* sachant. *P. p.* ***su.***
Pres. Je *sais,* tu *sais,* il *sait,* nous savons, vous savez, ils savent. *Subj.* Que je *sache,* que tu saches, qu'il sache, que nous sachions, qus vous sachiez, qu'ils sachent. *Imperf.* Je savais, tu savais, etc.
Pret. Je sus, tu sus, il sut, nous sûmes, vous sûtes, ils surent. *Fut.* Je saurai, tu sauras, etc.
Imper. Sache, sachons, sachez.

Note. There is also an old form of the Pres. Ind. *Je sache.* The Cond. *Je ne saurais* (without *pas*) signifies: I cannot, as: **Je ne saurais vous dire,** I cannot tell you.

63) **Valoir,** to be worth. *P. pr.* valant. *P. p.* ***valu.***
Pres. Je *vaux,* tu *vaux,* il *vaut,* nous valons, vous valez, ils valent. *Subj.* Que je *vaille,* que tu *vailles,* qu'il *vaille,* que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils *vaillent.*
Imperf. Je valais.
Pret. Je valus, tu valus, il valut, nous valûmes, etc.
Fut. Je *vaudrai,* tu *vaudras,* etc. *Cond.* Je *vaudrais.*

Observe the expression: *il vaut mieux,* it is better, etc.
Conjugate in the same manner: ***prévaloir,*** to prevail; but it makes in the Subj. pres,: *que je prévale* (not *prévaille*), *que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent.*

64) **Vouloir,** to be willing. *P. pr.* voulant. *P. p.* ***voulu.***
Pres. Je *veux,* tu *veux,* il *veut,* nous voulons, vous voulez, ils *veulent. Subj.* Que je *veuille,* que tu *veuilles,* qu'il *veuille,* que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils *veuillent. Imper. (Veuille), veuillez,* be so kind as.
Imperf. Je voulais, = I chose.
Pret. Je voulus, tu voulus, il voulut, nous voulûmes, etc.

---

*) *Puis* is only used in the 1st pers. sing. *I cannot* is mostly expressed by: *je ne puis* (without *pas*), or: *je ne peux pas.*

Fut. Je voudrai, tu voudras, etc.
Cond. Je voudrais, *I should like to.*

65) **Voir,** to see. *P. pr.* voyant. *P. p.* ***vu.***
Pres. Je *vois,* tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient. *Imperf.* Je voyais, tu voyais, etc.
Pret. Je *vis,* tu vis, il vit, nous vîmes, vous vîtes, etc.
Fut. Je *verrai,* tu *verras,* il *verra,* etc.
Imper. Vois, voyons, voyez.
Thus: ***revoir,*** to see again; ***entrevoir,*** to have a glimpse of. For ***pourvoir,*** and ***prévoir,*** see Nr. 60. — ***Aller voir*** and ***venir voir*** *qn.* are rendered: to call upon a person.

66) **S'asseoir,** to sit down. *P. pr.* s'asseyant. *P. p.* ***assis.***
Pres. Je m'*assieds,* tu t'*assieds,* il s'*assied,* nous nous *asseyons,* vous vous *asseyez,* ils s'*asseient.*
Imperf. Je m'asseyais.
Pret. Je m'assis, tu t'assis, il s'assit, nous nous assîmes, vous vous assîtes, ils s'assirent.
Fut. Je m'*assiérai,* tu t'*assiéras,* il s'*assiéra,* etc. (or je m'asseierai, tu t'asseieras, il s'asseiera, etc.).
Imper. Assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous.

Le danger, the danger.

Exercise. 84.

We ought to write a letter to our brother. When shall you receive some money? I received some yesterday. She ought to be happy. They owe me several francs. It would be necessary to see him. They have moved the table. It will not rain. We foresaw the danger. May they be happy! I cannot see him. We shall be able to do it. Does he know his lesson? He will know it in a half an hour. How much is this horse worth? It is worth 1000 francs. Whe shall see her to-morrow. Sit down. We shall not sit down. They would sit down. I sat down. He was sitting down. Will you tell him that I was here? Can you see them? I can read English. I have found his watch, and shall send it to him. Can you lend *(prêter)* him some money, he has none.

LESSON XLVIII.

Irregular Verbs. Third Class continued.

The following three may be added here:

67) **Rire,** to laugh. *P. pr.* riant. *P. p.* ***ri.*** (See p. 68.)
Pres. Je ris. *Imperf.* Je riais.
Pret. Je ris, tu ris, il rit, etc. *Fut.* Je rirai.

68) **Envoyer,** to send. *P. pr.* envoyant. *P. p.* ***envoyé.***
Pres. J'envoie. *Imperf.* J'envoyais. *Pret.* J'envoyai.
Fut. J'enverrai. tu enverras, etc. *Cond.* J'enverrais.

69) **Aller,** to go. *P. pr.* allant. *P. p.* ***allé.***
Pres. Je ***vais***, tu ***vas***, il ***va***, nous allons, vous allez, ils ***vont***. *Pres. Subj.* Que j'***aille***, que tu ***ailles***, qu'il ***aille***, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils ***aillent***.
Imperf. J'allais, tu allais, il allait, etc.
Pret. J'allai, tu allas, il alla, nous allâmes, vous allâtes, ils allèrent.
Imperf. Subj. Que j'allasse, que tu allasses, qu'il allât, etc.
Imper. Va, allons, allez. *Perf.* Je ***suis*** allé, *I have gone.*
Fut. J'irai *(I shall go)*, tu iras, il ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils iront. *Cond.* J'irais, tu irais, etc.

NB. The Present and Imperfect of aller before an Infinitive often form idiomatic futures and correspond to the English to be going. Ex.:

Je vais déjeûner, I am going to breakfast.
Nous allons danser, we are going to dance.

Conjugation of s'en aller, to go away.

We give the reflective verb ***s'en aller***, to go away, at full length, because its conjugation is rather difficult on account of its two pronouns. Observe that *en* is never separated from the accusative *m'*, *t'*, *s'*, *nous* etc.; hence it follows, that the compound or Perfect must not be written: *je me suis en allé*, but ***je m'en suis allé, tu t'en es allé, etc.***

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je m'en vais, *I go away.*	*Pl.* nous nous en allons, *we go away.*
tu t'en vas, etc.	vous vous en allez, etc.
il s'en va, etc.	ils s'en vont, etc.
Neg. Je ne m'en vais pas.	M'en vais-je? *do I go away?* etc.
tu ne t'en vas pas, etc.	Ne m'en vais-je pas? etc.

Imperfect.

Je m'en allais, *I went away.*	M'en allais-je? *did I go away?*
tu t'en allais etc.	Ne m'en allais-je pas?
Neg. Je ne m'en allais pas.	

Preterite.

Je m'en allai, *I went away.*	M'en allai-je?
Neg. Je ne m'en allai pas.	Ne m'en allai-je pas?

Future.

Je m'en irai.	M'en irai-je?
Neg. Je ne m'en irai pas.	Ne m'en irai-je pas?

Imperative Mood.

Affirmative.	*Negative.*
Va-t'en, *go away, be off!*	Ne t'en va pas, *do not go away.*
(qu'il s'en aille).	(qu'il ne s'en aille pas).
allons-nous-en.	ne nous en allons pas.
allez-vous-en.	ne vous en allez pas.
(qu'ils s'en aillent).	(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas).

Compound of the Present.

Je m'en ***suis*** allé, *I have gone*	*Pl.* nous nous en sommes allés.
tu t'en es allé. *[away.*	vous vous en êtes allé(s).
il s'en est allé.	ils s'en sont allés.
elle s'en est allée.	elles s'en sont allées.

Negatively.

Je ne m'en suis pas allé.	nous ne nous en sommes pas allés.
tu ne t'en es pas allé.	vous ne vous en êtes pas allé(s).
il ne s'en est pas allé.	ils ne s'en sont pas allés.

Interrogatively.

M'en suis-je allé?	nous en sommes-nous allés?
t'en es-tu allé?	vous en êtes-vous allé(s)?
s'en est-il allé?	s'en sont-ils allés?

Negative-Interrogative.

Ne m'en suis-je pas allé?	ne nous en sommes-nous p. allés?
ne t'en es-tu pas allé?	ne vous en êtes-vous pas allé(s)?
ne s'en est-il pas allé?	ne s'en sont-ils pas allés?

Pluperfect.

Je m'en ***étais*** allé.	M'en étais-je allé?
N. Je ne m'en étais pas allé.	Ne m'en étais-je pas allé?

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je m'en aille.	que nous nous en allions.
que tu t'en ailles.	que vous vous en alliez.
qu'il s'en aille.	qu'ils s'en aillent.

Imperfect.	Perfect.
Que je m'en allasse.	Que je m'en sois allé.
que tu t'en allasses.	Pluperfect.
qu'il s'en allât, etc.	Que je m'en fusse allé.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. S'en aller, *to go away.* — *Past.* S'en être allé.

Participle.

Pres. S'en allant, *going away.* — *Past.* S'en étant allé.

Le théâtre, the theatre.

Exercise. 85.

1 I am sending him a present. 2 We shall send you some money. 3 Shall you go to the theatre this evening? 4 They are going to Paris. 5 Come with us. 6 They have gone. 7 I am going away to-morrow. 8 Do not go away. 9 Where is he going? 10 He is going to London. 11 Will they not go away? 12 They are going to dance. 13 I shall not go with her. 14 They will laugh. 15 They would not send us any money.

LESSON XLIX.

Of the defective Verbs.

Verbs whereof some tenses or persons are wanting, are defective Verbs. They are as follows:

70) **Braire,** to bray.
Pres. Il brait, ils braient. *Fut.* Il braira.
Cond. Il brairait.

71) **Bruire,** to roar. *P. pr.* bruyant.
Imperf. Il bruyait; *pl.* Ils bruyaient.

72) **Choir,** to fall. *P. p.* chu.

73) **Clore,** to close. *P. p.* clos.
Pres. Je clos, tu clos, it clôt.
Fut. Je clorai, tu cloras, etc. *Cond.* Je clorais.

74) **Éclore,** to be hatched. *P. p.* éclos.
Pres. Il éclôt; *pl.* Ils éclosent. *Subj.* Qu'il éclose; *pl.* Qu'ils éclosent.
Fut. Il éclôra; *pl.* Ils éclôront. — Its compound tenses are formed with *être.*

75) **Faillir,** to fail. *P. pr.* (faillant). *P. p.* failli.
Pres. Il faut.
Pret. Je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit, nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent.
Perf. J'ai failli, *I had nearly.*
Thus: *défaillir*, to faint.

76) **Férir,** is used only in the expression: *sans coup férir,* without striking a blow.

77) **Frire,** to fry. *P. pr. wanting. P. p.* frit.
Pres. Je fris, tu fris, il frit. *Pl. wanting.*
Fut. Je frirai. *Cond.* Je frirais. *Perf.* J'ai frit, etc.

78) **Gésir,** to lie. *P. pr.* gisant.
Pres. ci-gît, *here lies; pl.* ci-gisent *(used on tombstones).*
Further: nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent.
Imperf. ci-gisait; *pl.* ci-gisaient.

79) **Issir,** to be born, is used, in the *P. p. issu* only.

80) **Ouir,** to hear. *P. p.* ouï.
Pret. J'ouis, tu ouis, etc. *Imperf. Subj.* Que j'ouisse, etc.
Further the compound tenses, as: *j'ai ouï.*

81) **Sourdre,** to rush out of the ground, as water, has only the Infinitive and the Pres.: *elle sourd, elles sourdent.*

82) **Seoir,** to fit. *P. pr.* séant. *P. p.* sis.
Ind. pres. Il sied. *Fut.* Il siéra. *Cond.* Il siérait.

83) **Surseoir,** to put off. *P. p.* sursis.
Pres. Je surseois. *Pret.* Je sursis.
Note. Most of these verbs are not much in use.

An alphabetical list

of all the French irregular and defective Verbs.*)

(Containing their five primitive Tenses.)

Infinitive.	*Pres.*	*Pr. part.*	*Past. p.*	*Pret.*	*Nr.*
Absoudre, absolve	j'absous	absolvant	absous	*wanting*	13.
Acquérir, acquire	j'acquiers	acquérant	acquis, e	j'acquis	53.
Aller, to go	je vais	allant	allé, e	j'allai	69.
Assaillir, to assail	j'assaille	assaillant	assailli	j'assaillis	47.
S'*asseoir,* to sit	je m'assieds	s'asseyant	assis, e	je m'assis	66.
Atteindre, to attain	j'atteins	atteignant	atteint	j'atteignis	14.
Boire, to drink	je bois	buvant	bu, e	je bus	19.
Bouillir, to boil	je bous	bouillant	bouilli, e	je bouillis	50.
Braire, to bray	il brait	—	*wanting*	*wanting*	70.
Bruire, roar *Imp.*	il bruyait	bruyant	—	—	71.
Ceindre, to gird	je ceins	ceignant	ceint, e	je ceignis	14.
Choir, see déchoir		—	—	—	56.
Circoncire, to circumcise	je circoncis	—	circoncis	je circoncis	2.
Clore, to close	je clos	—	clos	—	73.
Concevoir, conceive	je conçois	concevant	conçu, e	je conçus	55.
*Conclure,***) conclude	je conclus	concluant	conclu, e	je conclus.	

*) The *derivatives* which are not in this Table, will be found with the primitives, under their respective number.

**) See p. 68, 4.

Infinitive.	*Pres.*	*Pr. part.*	*Past. p.*	*Pret.*	*Nr.*
Confire, pickle	je confis	confisant	confit, e	je confis	2.
Connaître, know	je connais	connaisssant	connu, e	je connus	26.
Coudre, to sew	je couds	cousant	cousu, e	je cousis	11.
Courir, to run	je cours	courant	couru, e	je courus	41.
Couvrir, to cover	je couvre	couvrant	couvert	je couvris	46.
Craindre, to fear	je crains	craignant	craint, e	je craignis	15.
Croire, believe	je crois	croyant	cru, e	je crus	20.
Croître, to grow	je crois	croissant	crû, e	je crûs	21.
Cueillir, gather	je cueille	cueillant	cueilli, e	je cueillis	42.
Cuire, to boil	je cuis	cuisant	cuit, e	je cuisis	4.
Déchoir, to decay	je déchois	—	déchu, e	je déchus	56.
Devoir, to owe	je dois	devant	dû	je dus	54.
Dire, to say	je dis	disant	dit, e	je dis	7.
Dormir, to sleep	je dors	dormant	dormi	je dormis	35.
Échoir, expire	il échoit	échéant	échu	il échut	56.
Éclore, be hatched	il éclôt	—	éclos	—	74.
Écrire, to write	j'écris	écrivant	écrit, e	j'écrivis	17.
Envoyer, to send	j'envoie	envoyant	envoyé	j'envoyai	68.
Faire, to make, do	je fais	faisant	fait, e	je fis	27.
Faillir, to fail	il faut	faillant	failli	je faillis	75.
Falloir, must	il faut	—	fallu	il fallut	57.
Feindre, to feign	je feins	feignant	feint, e	je feignis	14.
Férir, strike	—	—	—	—	76.
Frire, to stew	je fris	—	frit, e	—	77.
Fuir, to flee	je fuis	fuyant	fui	je fuis	32.
Gésir, to lie	il gît	gisant	—	—	78.
Joindre, to join	je joins	joignant	joint, e	je joignis	16.
Issir, to issue	—	—	issu, e	—	79.
Instruire, teach	j'instruis	instruisant	instruit	j'instruisis	6.
Lire, to read	je lis	lisant	lu, e	je lus	18.
Luire, to shine	je luis	luisant	lui	—	1.
Mentir, to lie	je mens	mentant	menti	je mentis	37.
Mettre, to put	je mets	mettant	mis, e	je mis	28.
Moudre, to grind	je mouds	moulant	moulu, e	je moulus	12.
Mourir, to die	je meurs	mourant	mort, e	je mourus	49.
Mouvoir, move	je meurs	mouvant	mu, e	je mus	58.
Naître, to be born	je nais	naissant	né, e	je naquis	30.
Nuire, to injure	je nuis	nuisant	nui	je nuisis	3.
Offrir, to offer	j'offre	offrant	offert, e	j'offris	43.
Oindre, to oint	j'oins	—	oint	j'oignis	16.
Ouir, to hear	—	—	ouï	j'ouis	80.
Ouvrir, to open	j'ouvre	ouvrant	ouvert, e	j'ouvris	45.
Paître, to graze	je pais	paissant	pû	—	25.
Paraître, appear	je parais	paraissant	paru	je parus	24.
Partir, to set out	je pars	partant	parti	je partis	36.
Peindre, to paint	je peins	peignant	peint	je peignis	14.
Plaindre, to complain	je plains	plaignant	plaint	je plaignis	15.

Infinitive.	*Pres.*	*Pr. part.*	*Past. p.*	*Pret.*	*Nr.*
Plaire, to please	je plais	plaisant	plu	je plus	22.
Pleuvoir, to rain	il pleut	pleuvant	plu	il plut	59.
Prendre, to take	je prends	prenant	pris	je pris	29.
Poindre, to point	je poins	poignant	(peint)	(je poignis)	16.
Pourvoir, supply	je pourvois	pourvoyant	pourvu	je pourvus	60.
Pouvoir, to be able	je peux(puis)	pouvant	pu	je pus	61.
Recevoir, receive	je reçois	recevant	reçu	je reçus	55.
Repentir, se, to repent	je me repens	repentant	repenti	je me repentis	39.
Restreindre, to restrain	je restreins	—	restreint	je restreignis	14.
Rire, to laugh	je ris	riant	ri	je ris	67.
Saillir, stand out	il saille	saillant	sailli	il saillit	48.
Savoir, to know	je sais	sachant	su, e	je sus	62.
Sentir, to feel	je sens	sentant	senti, e	je sentis	38.
Seoir, to fit	il sied	séant	sis, e	—	82.
Servir, to serve	je sers	servant	servi, e	je servis	34.
Sortir, to got out	je sors	sortant	sorti	je sortis	40.
Souffrir, to suffer	je souffre	souffrant	souffert	je souffris	44.
Sourdre, spring	elle sourd	—	—	—	81.
Suivre, to follow	je suis	suivant	suivi	je suivis	9.
Suffire, to suffice	je suffis	suffisant	suffi	je suffis	2.
Surseoir, put off	je surseois	sursoyant	sursis	jo sursis	83.
Taire, to be silent	je tais	taisant	tû, e	je tus	23.
Teindre, to dye	je teins	teignant	teint, e	je teignis	14.
Tenir, to hold	je tiens	tenant	tenu, e	je tins	52.
Traire, to milk	je trais	trayant	trait	—	8.
Tressaillir, startle	je tressaille	tressaillant	tressailli	je tressaillis	47.
Valoir, be worth	je vaux	valant	valu	je valus	63.
Vaincre, conquer	je vaincs	vainquant	vaincu	je vainquis	10.
Venir, to come	je viens	venant	venu, e	je vins	51.
Vêtir, to clothe	je vêts	vêtant	vêtu	je vêtis	33.
Vivre, to live	je vis	vivant	vécu	je vécus	31.
Voir, to see	je vois	voyant	vu, e	je vis	65.
Vouloir, to wish	je veux	voulant	voulu, e	je voulus	64.

bientôt, soon.

Exercise. 86.

1 Can you read this letter? 2 I can not read it. 3 Do you wish to see his uncle? 4 I do not wish to see him. 5 Why were they silent? 6 They have suffered much. 7 This boy does not know his lesson, but he will know it soon. 8 Will they not repent? 9 It has been raining. 10 He did not please us. 11 Why do you complain? 12 They set out yesterday, and will return on Thursday. 13 They opened the door. 14 Will you open this window? 15 I can not open it. 16 They told us that you were ill, but we did not believe them. 17 All men will die. 18 He would not have gone if you had been here. 19 We were reading this book. 20 Has she not instructed your brother? 21 Here lie many

soldiers. 1 We do not shun them. 2 Must we go away? 3 What were they doing? 4 They would have written to you. 5 We were asleep when our father came back. 6 Tell me what he said. 7 You tell me nothing. 8 Do not believe these men; they wish to deceive you. 9 Does he know my uncle's friend? 10 We shall sit down here. 11 Has this merchant acquired much money? 12 They departed without striking a blow.

LESSON L.

Promiscuous Exercises.

Exercise. 87.

13 Which men have you seen? 14 I have not enough cheese. 15 Has he as many pens as pencils? 16 If you have any money, give me some. 17 If you have any pens, give us some of them. 18 Does she want a new hat? 19 Whose book are you reading? 20 Whose house is this? 21 Did you receive this watch from your uncle? 22 Why does she not shut the door? 23 I shall write him a long letter. 24 I wish to see you. 25 Those men were rejoicing. 26 Do they wish to drink some wine? 27 I can not conceive what this boy is doing.

Exercise. 88.

28 I do not understand what this man says. 29 The water will soon boil. 30 Boil me some water. 31 Why did your brother put this letter on the table? 32 Will you go with us to the theatre? 33 They had just arrived. 34 Which book would he read? 35 We could not believe him. 36 The children will soon fall asleep. 37 Will it be necessary to tell him that I have seen you? 38 He will offer me some money, but I shall not take it. 39 Those boys were instructed by this man. 40 He was loved by everybody who knew him. 41 It was raining and snowing. 42 It will freeze to night. 43 Why would your uncle not sell his house? 44 He went away to-day. 45 You are always complaining. 46 They would not complain, if you would stay with them.

APPENDIX.

I. NOUNS.

The genders of Substantives.

I. Rules on the gender of simple Nouns.

§ 1. **Masculine** by their signification are:

1) The names of all masculine beings, as: *Henri*, Henry; *l'empereur*, the emperor; *le maître*, the master; *le Français*, the Frenchman; *le taureau*, the bull, etc.

2) The names of countries, places and rivers not ending in *e* mute, as: *le Portugal*, *le Wurtemberg*, *le beau Paris*, *le Rhin*.

3) The names of metals, trees, seasons, months and days, as: *le fer*, iron; *le chêne*, the oak; *le printemps*, spring; *le joli mai*, (the) fine May; *(le) lundi*, Monday, on Mondays, etc.

4) All words that are made substantives by prefixing the article, as: *le vert*, the green (colour); *le noir*, the black; *le bien*, the good; *le boire et le manger*, drinking and eating; *le oui et le non*, the yes and no.

§ 2. **Masculine** by their termination are:

1) All nouns ending with the liquid *-il*, not *-ille**), as: *le détail*, the detail; *le soleil*, the sun; *le recueil*, the collection; *l'œil*, the eye; *le fusil*, the gun, etc.

*) See p. 8, 1, and p. 122, § 4, 2.

2) Nouns ending with a nasal sound**) as: *le volcan*, the volcano; *le vent*, the wind, *le moment*, the moment; *le daim*, the buck; *le sein*, the bosom; *le vin*, the wine; *le fond*, the bottom.

**) See p. 8 and 9.

Except: *la main*, the hand; *la faim*, hunger; *la dent*, the tooth; *la leçon*, the lesson, and all nouns ending in *-son* and *-ion*.

3) Nouns ending in:

ar: *le bar*, the bass; *le mar*, the bag.
al: *le cheval*, the horse.
age: *le courage*[1], courage.
eil: *le réveil*, the ion.
as: *le repas*, the meal.
au: *le tableau*[2], the picture.
el: *le sel*, salt.
ège: *le siège*, the seat.
ème & *ôme*: *le poème*[3], the poem; *le thème*, the exercise.
er & *ier*: *le rocher*[4], the rock; *le pommier*, the apple-tree.
ès: *le progrès*, the progress.
i: *le musée*, the muse.
in & *ain*: *le vin*, the wine.
is: *le lis*[5], the carpet.
isme: *mécanisme*, mechanism.
it: *le profit*[6], the gain, profit.
oir: *le miroir*, the mirror; *le tiroir*, the drawer.
or: *le trésor*, the treasure.
o: *le sol*, the soil.
ô: *le mot*, the word[7].
on: *le perron*, the dot.
our & *ours*: *le séjour*, the stay; *le tambour*, drum; *le secours*[8], the help.

§ 3. **Feminine** by signification are:

1) All names of female persons and animals, as: *Marie*, Mary; *la reine*, the queen; *la fille*, the girl; *la jument*, the mare, etc.

2) The names of fruits, flowers and herbs, as: *la poire*, the pear; *la pomme*, the apple; *la rose*, the rose; *l'herbe*, f. the grass.

Except: *le marron*, the chestnut; *le citron*, the lemon; *le raisin*, the grape; *un abricot*, an apricot; *un œillet*, a pink; *le lis*, the lily, and a few more, on account their masculine termination. (See § 2. 3).

3) The names of countries, places and rivers ending in *e* mute, as: *la France*, *la Prusse*, *l'ancienne Rome*, *la Loire*, *la Seine*, etc.

Except: *le Hanovre*, *le Mexique*, *le Danube*, *le Rhône*.

---

1) Except: *la cage*, the cage; *l'image*, f. the image, picture; *la page*, the page (of a book); *la plage*, the strand; *la rage*, rage; *la nage*, swimming.

2) Except: *l'eau*, f. the water.

3) Except: *la crème*, cream.

4) Except: *la mer*, the sea.

5) Except: *la souris*, the mouse; *la brebis*, a sheep; *la vis* (pronounce *visse*), the screw.

6) Except: *la nuit*, the night.

7) Except: *la dot* (pronounce *dotte*), the dowry, portion.

8) Except: *la cour*, the court; *la tour*, the tower.

§ 4. **Feminine** by their termination are:

1) All nouns ending with *e* mute preceded by another vowel, as: *la vie*, life; *la vue*, the sight; *l'épée*, the sword.

Except: *le foie*, the liver; *un incendie*, a fire.

2) The nouns ending in the liquid sound *-ille*, as: *la fille*, the daughter; *la feuille*, the leaf (see 6).

3) Those ending in:

ace: la glace [1]), the ice.
ade: la salade, the salad.
aine & eine: la plaine, the plain; *la peine*, the trouble.
ance: la constance, (the) constancy.
ence & ense: l'innocence [2]), innocence; *la défense*, defence.
ande, ante & ente: la viande, meat, *la tante*, the aunt; *la tente*, the tent.
ête: la tête, the head.
eur: la douleur [3]) the pain; *la grandeur*, greatness.
ière: la lumière [4]), the light.
ine: la famine, the famine.
ion: l'action, the action.
ote: la pelote, the ball.
son: la maison, the house; *la chanson*, the song; *la moisson*, the harvest.
té: la bonté [5]), the kindness.
tié: l'amitié, friendship.
ude: gratitude, gratitude.
une: la lune, the moon.
ure: la piqûre [6]), the sting.

4) These four words ending in *i* are feminine:

la foi, faith.
la loi, law.
la fourmi, the ant.
la merci, mercy.

5) Most nouns ending in *oire* (not *oir*) are feminine, as:

la gloire, glory.
l'histoire, f. history.
la victoire, victory.
la machoire, the jaw.

6) Feminine are those which have two consonants of the same kind before *e* mute: (*-asse, atte, elle, esse, ette, amme, emme, omme, onne, olle, otte, outte, arre, erre, ourre*, etc.).

---

1) Except: *l'espace*, m. the space.

2) Except: *le silence*, silence.

3) Except: *le bonheur*, happiness; *le malheur*, misfortune; *l'honneur*, the honour; *le déshonneur*, disgrace; *le cœur*, the heart, and all masculine names and appellations, as: *le tailleur*, the tailor; *le professeur*, the professor, etc.

4) Except: *le cimetière*, the church-yard.

5) Except: *le côté*, the side, *le pâté*, the pie; *le traité*, the treaty; *l'été*, the summer; *le comté*, the county.

6) Except: *le murmure*, murmur; *le parjure*, perjury.

Ex.:

la chasse, hunting.	*la somme,* the sum.
la natte, a mat.	*la lionne,* the lioness.
la chapelle, the chapel.	*la carotte,* the carrot.
la charrette, the cart.	*la goutte,* the drop; gout.
la noisette, the hazelnut.	*le barre,* the bar.
la femme, the woman.	*la terre,* the earth.
la gomme, Indian rubber.	*la pierre,* the stone, etc.

Exceptions: *l'homme,* m. man; *le somme,* the nap, sleep; *le verre,* the glass; *le tonnerre,* the thunder; *le beurre,* the butter.

II. Gender of compound Substantives.

This depends upon the manner of their composition.

1) When the first component is a noun, it determines the gender of the whole, as:

un cerf-volant, the stag-beetle.
le chou-fleur, the cauliflower.
un arc-en-ciel, a rainbow.

2) When they consist of a preposition and a noun, the gender of the noun remains for the whole, as:

le contre-coup, the counter-buff.
l'avant-bras, m. the fore-arm.
l'avant-main droite, f. the right fore-hand.

3) Those nouns compounded with a verb and noun are always of the masculine gender, as:

le porte-manteau, the portmanteau.
le tire-bouchon, the corkscrew.
le porte-feuille, the portfolio (though *feuille* is feminine).

III. Double gender of some Nouns.

§ 1. The following nouns have a double gender:

l'aide, m. the assistant, —	*l'aide,* f. the help, support.
l'aigle, m. the eagle, —	*l'aigle,* f. the standard.
l'aune, m. the alder tree, —	*l'aune,* f. the ell, yard.
un couple, a couple, husband and wife, —	*une couple,* a brace, two of a sort.
un enseigne, an ensign, —	*une enseigne,* a sign.
le forêt, the gimlet,	*la forêt,* the forest, wood.
le garde, the keeper,	*la garde,* the guard, watch.
le guide, the guide,	*la guide,* the rein in driving.
le livre, the book,	*la livre,* the pound.
la manche, the handle of a tool,	*la manche,* the sleeve.
le mémoire, the memorandum,	*la mémoire,* the memory.
le mort, a dead man,	*la mort,* death.

le mousse, the cabin-boy, — —	*la mousse,* the moss.
l'orgue, m. sing. the organ,	*les orgues,* pl. organ, is feminine.
le page, the page to a prince,	*la page,* the page (of a book).
un paillasse, a merry andrew,	*une paillasse,* a straw-bed.
Pâques, pl. m. Easter,	*la pâque,* the Passover.
le poêle, the stove,	*la poêle,* the frying-pan.
le post, the post, military post,	*la poste,* the post-office.
un somme, a nap, slumber,	*la somme,* the sum.
le tour, the trick, turn,	*la tour,* the tower.
le trompette, the trumpeter,	*la trompette,* the trumpet.
une voile, a veil,	*une voile,* a sail.

§ 2. There are in French some nouns which have no particular form for the feminine and remain always *masculine,* even when applied to a woman. Such are:

un auteur, / *un écrivain,* } m. & f. an author, a writer.
un orateur, m. & f. an orator.
un peintre, m. & f. a painter.
un sculpteur, m. & f. a sculptor.
un témoin, m. & f. a witness.

Note. Sometimes the word *femme* may precede, as: *une femme auteur, les femmes poètes.*

§ 3. On the contrary, there are a few feminine nouns which apply also to male individuals:

la caution, the bail.	*la basse,* the bass.
la pratique, the customer.	*la sentinelle,* the sentry.

IV. Formation of female appellations.

Many appellations of male individuals allow also a female appellation to be formed from them, by changing the termination.

§ 1. Male appellations which are originally adjectives, form their feminine according to the rules on the adjectives (see p. 45—47), as:

Masculine.	Feminine.
le Français, the Frenchman,	*la Française,* the Frenchwoman.
un Russe, a Russian,	*une Russe,* a Russian lady.
un juif, a Jew,	*une juive,* a Jewess.
l'époux, the husband,	*l'épouse,* the wife.
le veuf, the widower,	*la veuve,* the widow.
le Grec, the Greek,	*la Grecque,* the Greek woman.

§ 2. Those ending in one of the nasal sounds *an*, *on*, *ien* (not *in*), and those in *t* double their *n* or *t* before the feminine *e*, as:

Masc.	Fem.
le paysan, the peasant,	*la paysanne*, a peasant woman.
le lion, the lion,	*la lionne*, the lioness.
le chrétien, the Christian,	*la chrétienne*, the Christian woman.
le baron, the baron,	*la baronne*, the baroness.
le chien, the dog,	*la chienne*, the bitch.

§ 3. Nouns ending in *e* mute or *é*, form their feminine in *esse*, as:

Masc.	Fem.
le comte, the count,	*la comtesse*, the countess.
le nègre, the negro,	*la négresse*, the negress.
le maître, the master,	*la maîtresse*, the mistress.
le prince, the prince,	*la princesse*, the princess.
l'âne, the ass,	*l'ânesse*, the she-ass.
l'abbé, the abbot,	*l'abbesse*, the abbess.

§ 4. Those in *-eur* change this termination into *-euse:*

le danceur, the dancer,	*la danseuse*, the dancer, *f.*
le chasseur, the hunter,	*la chasseuse*, the huntress.

§ 5. Those in *-teur* change it into *-trice*, as:

l'acteur, the actor,	*l'actrice*, the actress.
le bienfaiteur, the benefactor,	*la bienfaitrice*, the benefactress.
le tuteur, the guardian.	*la tutrice*, the tutoress.

§ 6. The following nouns form their feminine in an irregular way:

Masc.	Fem.
le dieu, the God, — —	*la déesse*, the Goddess.
le duc, the duke,	*la duchesse*, the duchess.
l'empereur, the emperor,	*l'impératrice*, the empress.
le roi, the king,	*la reine*, the queen.
le héros, the hero,	*l'héroïne*, the heroine.
le gouverneur, the tutor,	*la gouvernante*, the governess.
le serviteur, the man-servant,	*la servante*, the maid-servant.
le pécheur, the sinner,	*la pécheresse*, the sinner, *f.*
le compagnon, the companion,	*la compagne*, the companion, *f.*
le larron, the thief,	*la larronesse*, the thief, *f.*
le loup, the he-wolf,	*la louve*, the she-wolf.
le mulet, the mule,	*la mule*, the mule, *f.*
le dindon, the turkey-cock,	*la dinde*, the turkey-hen.

Plural of Nouns.

(See Lesson IV.)

The general rules on this subject have already been given in lesson IV, p. 14, 15. We have to add here the following particulars:

§ 1. Nouns of two and more syllables, ending in *-ant* and *-ent* are spelled by some French writers in the plural *-ens*, and *-ans*, instead of *-ents* and *-ants*, as: *momens* for *moments*, *enfans* for *enfants*. This orthography however is not to be recommended.

§ 2. The following nouns in *al* and *ail* do not form their plural in *aux*, but take an *s*:

le bal, the ball.
le cal, callus.
le chacal, the jackal.
le carneval, the carnival.
le régal, the regale.
le détail, the particular.
le gouvernail, the helm, rudder.
l'éventail, m. the fan.
l'épouvantail, m. the scare-crow.
un portail, a portal, door-way.
le poitrail, poitrel.
le serail, the seraglio.
l'ail, garlic (has in plur. both *les ails* and *les iaux*).

Plurals: *les bals, le cals, les détails, les éventails, etc.*

Note. *Le bétail*, cattle, makes in the plural *les bestiaux*.

§ 3. The usual plural of *ciel* is *cieux*, the heavens; there is however a regular plural: *les ciels*, meaning 1) the testers, 2) the climats, 3) the skies of pictures.

§ 4. *L'œil*, the eye, has in the plural *les yeux*; — *aïeul* takes an *s* in its plural, when it means grandfathers or grandmothers, taken in the particular sense, and *aïeux*, when in the sense of ancestors.

§ 5. How compound words form their plural.

1) When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective or of two substantives, both take the mark of the plural. Ex.:

les beaux-frères, the brothers-in-law.
les belles-sœurs, the sisters-in-law.
les choux-fleurs, the cauliflowers.
les chefs-lieux, the chief-towns (of counties).

2) But when a word is composed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the plural termination. Ex.:

les chefs-d'œuvre, the master-pieces.
les arcs-en-ciel, the rainbows.

3) When a word consists of a substantive and a verb or preposition, the substantive alone can take the sign of the plural, if required by the sense. Ex.:

les tire-bottes, the boot-jacks.
les essui-mains, the towels.
les garde-fous, the balusters.

4) When there is no substantive in the compound word, none of the components ean take the mark of the plural. Ex.:

le passe-partout (not *passe-partouts*), the master-keys.
les forte-piano, the pianos.

5) The words: *la grand'mère*, the grandmother; *la grand'tante*, grand-aunt; *la grand'rue*, the main street; *la grand'route*, the highway, have in the plural *les grand'-mères, les grand'tantes, etc.*

§ 6. The following nouns have in the plural another meaning than in singular:

Singular.	Plural.
le ciseau, the chisel, — —	*les ciseaux*, the scissors.
la lunette, the telescope,	*les lunettes*, the spectacles.
le fer, iron,	*les fers*, the fetters, chains.
la grâce, grace, pardon,	*les grâces*, grace, charms.
le gage, the pawn, pledge,	*les gages*, the wages.
la mesure, the measure,	*les mesures*, the measures, steps.
l'herbe, grass,	*les herbes*, herbs.
la viande, meat,	*les viandes*, meats, food.
la troupe, the troop,	*les troupes*, the troops.
la lumière, the light,	*les lumières*, knowledge.
l'aboi, m. the barking,	*les abois*, agony.
la défense, the defencé,	*les défenses*, the tusks, fangs.

§ 7. Substantives which have no singular in French:

les annales, f. the annals.
les ancêtres, m. the ancestors.
les alentours, m. } the en-
les environs, m. } virons.
les broussailles, f. brush-wood.
les décombres, m. rubbish.
les débris, m. the remains.
le dépens, m. cost.
les entrailles, f. the entrails.
les frais, m. expense(s).
les funérailles, f. funeral rites.
les gens, m. people.
les hardes, f. clothes.
les légumes, m. vegetables.
les mathématiques, f. mathematics.
les matériaux, materials.
les mœurs, f. the manners.
les mouchettes, f. the snuffers.
des mouchettes, a pair of snuffers.
les pleurs, f. the tears.
les ténèbres, f. darkness.
les vivres, m. victuals.

II. ADVERBS.

Adverbs are divided into the following classes: 1) adverbs of quality, 2) place, 3) time, 4) number, 5) quantity, 6) affirmation and negation.

1) Adverbs of quality.

Adverbs of quality serve to modify a verb or an adjective. Most of the French adjectives become adverbs by adding the syllable *-ment*, according to the following rules:

1) Adjectives ending in a vowel, simply add the final syllable *-ment*, as:

facile, easy; adv. *facilement*, easily.
poli, polite; „ *poliment*, politely.
vraie, true; „ *vraiment*, truly.

2) Adjectives which do not end in a vowel, add the syllable *-ment*, to their feminine termination, as:

haut, f. *haute*, high; adv. *hautement*, aloud.
doux, f. *douce*, soft, sweet, mild; adv. *doucement*, softly.
franc, f. *franche*, frank; adv. *franchement*, frankly, freely.
heureux, f. *heureuse*, happy; adv. *heureusement*, happily.

NB. To this rule belong also the adjectives, *nouveau*, new; *fou*, foolish, and *mou*, soft; adv. *nouvellement*, *follement*, *mollement*.

3) Adjectives which end in *-ant*, or *-ent*, become adverbs by changing the final *-ant* into *-amment*, and *-ent* into *-emment*, as:

constant, constant; adv. *constamment*.
prudent, prudent; „ *prudemment*.
patient, patient; „ *patiemment*.

NB. Exceptions to this rule are: *lent*, slow; adv. *lentement*, and *présent*, present; adv. *présentement*, actually.

4) The following adjectives take an *é* accented before the final *-ment*, as:

profond, deep, profound; adv. *profondément*, deeply.
commode, comfortable; „ *commodément*.
commun, common; „ *communément*.
précis, precise; „ *précisément*.
énorme, enormous; „ *énormément*.
exprès, express; „ *expressément*.
impuni, unpunished; „ *impunément*.

5) All these derived adverbs, as well as some others are compared, as:

	Comparative.	Superlative
facilement;	*plus facilement;*	*le plus facilement.*
commodément;	*plus commodément;*	*le plus commodément.*
souvent, often;	*plus souvent;*	*le plus souvent.*
longtemps; long;	*plus longtemps;*	*le plus longtemps.*
loin, far;	*plus loin;*	*le plus loin.*

Note. This superlative of adverbs never takes *la* instead of *le.* Ex.: *Marie est venue le plus souvent.*

6) The following adverbs deviate from others in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives:

	Comp.	Sup.
bien, well;	*mieux,* better;	*le mieux,* (the) best.
mal, badly;	*pis,* worse;	*le pis,* the worst.
peu, little;	*moins,* less;	*le moins,* the least.
beaucoup, much;	*plus,* more;	*le plus,* (the) most.

tant mieux, is rendered „so much the better."
tant pis, so much the worse.

7) The following adjectives are used adverbially without taking an additional termination, as:

vite, quick, fast.
fort, very.
haut, loudly.
bas, in a low voice.
exprès, purposely.
soudain, suddenly.
droit, straightways.

2) Adverbs of place.

Où, where? whither?
d'où, whence.
ici, here, *d'ici,* hence.
là, there.
de là, hence.
là-bas, there below, yonder.
près d'ici, near here.
y, there, therein.
par ici, this way.
par là, that way.
par-ci, par là, here and there.
ça et là, to and fro.
ailleurs, elsewhere.
dessous, / *par dessous,* } underneath.
dessus, / *par dessus,* } above, over
en haut, above, up stairs.
en bas, down stairs, below.
à côté, à part, aside, by.
dedans, / *en dedans,* } within, inside.
dehors, without, out of doors.
derrière, behind.
par derrière, from behind.
devant, / *par devant,* } before.
deça, en deça, on this side.
delà, en delà, on that side.
près, auprès, near.
proche, close by.
tout au tour, round about.
quelque part, somewhere.
partout, everywhere.
nulle part, nowhere.
jusqu'où? how far?
loin, far, far off.
ensemble, together.

3) Adverbs of time.

Quand, when?
combien de temps, how long?
aujourd'hui, to-day.
hier, yesterday.
avant-hier, the day before yesterday.
demain, to-morrow.
demain matin, to-morrow morning.
après-demain, the day after to-morrow.
bientôt, soon.
trop tôt, too soon.
tantôt, by and by.
aussitôt, directly.
tard, late.
d'abord, at first.
désormais, *dorénavant*, henceforth.
dès-lors, from then.
depuis, since.
à présent, *maintenant*, now, at present.
quelquefois, sometimes.
un jour, one day.
autrefois, *jadis*, formerly.
auparavant, previously, before.
alors, *puis*, then.
après, after, afterwards.
ensuite, afterwards.
enfin, at last, at length.
de bonne heure, early.
de meilleure heure, earlier.
(*tôt*, soon.)
plus tôt, sooner.
souvent, often.
longtemps, long.
toujours, always.
l'autre jour, *dernièrement*, *naguère*, the other day, lately, of late.
déjà, already.
encore, still, yet.
pas encore, not yet.
jamais, ever.
ne — jamais, never.
à jamais, *pour toujours*, for ever.

Remark. Place of Adverbs.

1) In the simple tenses the adverb is placed immediately after the verb which it modifies:

She always cries, *elle pleure toujours.*
I often take a walk with my friend.
Je me promène souvent avec mon ami.

2) When the verb is in a compound tense, the adverb generally comes between the auxiliary and the participle, as:

Je l'ai toujours respecté, I have always esteemed him.
Je me suis souvent promené avec mon maître.
I have often taken a walk with my master.

NB. *Hier, avant-hier, aujourd'hui, demain, après-demain, tantôt, tôt* and *tard*, and nearly all compound adverbs follow the participle.

4) Adverbs of number.

Premièrement, first.
deuxièmement, *secondement*, secondly.
troisièmement, thirdly.
quatrièmement, fourthly.
cinquièmement, fifthly.
sixièmement, sixthly, etc.
combien de fois, how often?
une fois, once; *deux fois*, twice; *trois fois*, three times.

5) Adverbs of quantity and comparison.

Comment, how?
combien, how much, how many?
beaucoup, much, many.
bien (with *du, de l', des* following), a great deal *or* many.
trop, too much, too many.
tant, so much, so many.
assez, enough, pretty.
peu, little, *un peu*, a little.
ne — guère, hardly.
bien, *très*, *fort*, very.
plus, more.
davantage, still more.
moins, less.
tout, *tout-à-fait*, quite, wholly, entirely.
presque, almost.
environ, *à-peu-près*, about.
si, so. ainsi, thus.
aussi, as, also.
également, likewise.
autant, as much, as many.
d'autant plus, so much the more.
plutôt, rather.
surtout, above all.
au plus, *tout au plus*, at most.
du moins, au moins, at least.
seulement, *ne — que*, only.
même, even.
pas même, *pas seulement*, not even.

6) Adverbs of affirmation and negation.

Oui, yes. *Si*, yes.
certes, certainly.
peut-être, perhaps.
certainement, *assurément*, certainly, to be sure.
non, no.
presque jamais, scarcely ever.
ne — pas, not.
ne — plus, no more.
non plus, nor . . . either.
ne — point, not, no.
pas du tout, *point du tout*, not at all.
ne — rien, nothing.

7) Besides these, there are many adverbial locutions of which we will mention only those most in use.

Such are:

tout-à-fait, quite, entirely.
par cœur, by heart.
à peine, scarcely.
en effet, really.
sur-le-champ, directly.
peu à peu, by degrees.
dans peu, or *sous peu*, soon.
à dessein, on purpose.
en même temps, at the same time.
à la fois, at once, at a time.
tout à coup, suddenly.
tout d'un coup, all at once.
à droite, to the right.
à gauche, to the left.
pêle-mêle, pell-mell.
sans doute, no doubt.
en général, generally.
comme cela, like that, so.
en vain, in vain.
de bonne heure, early.
de meilleure heure, earlier.
(à) bon marché, cheap.
à fond, thoroughly.
par an, yearly; *par jour*, daily.
par mois, monthly.
tout à l'heure, presently.
tout de suite, immediately.
par hasard, by chance.
en attendant, meanwhile.
de temps en temps, *de temps à autre*, from time, to time.

Of negation.

1) The adverb 'not' renders an English verb negative. It is translated into Erench by *ne,* which is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, in simple tenses. The auxiliaries «do» or «did» are not expressed in French. Examples:

Je ne veux pas, I will not, I do not wish.
Je ne sais pas, I do not know.

2) In compound tenses, *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas* after it. Ex.:

Je n'ai pas vu, I have not seen.
Elle n'a pas parlé, she did not speak.

3) *Ne* is employed without *pas,* if there is in the sentence a pronoun or adverb expressing negation, such as *personne, nul, rien, jamais, ni, ne — plus, point.* Ex:

Je ne connais personne, I know nobody.
Je ne veux rien, I wish for nothing.
Je ne sais plus, I no more know.
Elle n'a jamais dit cela, she never said so.

4) If one of the negations is followed by a noun in the partitive sense, this noun is simply preceded by *de:*

Affirm.: *J'ai du pain,* I have some bread.
Negat.: *Je n'ai pas de pain,* I have no bread.

Affirm.: *Avez-vous de l'argent?* have you any money?
Negat.: *Je n'ai pas* or *point d'argent,* I have no money.

5) With the *Present* Infinitive, *ne pas* or *ne point* are not separated, as:

ne pas se venger, not to revenge one's self.
ne plus écrire, to write no more.
ne rien manger, to eat nothing.

6) If the verb is in the Perfect of the Infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not, as:

not to have slept, { *ne pas avoir dormi.* / *n'avoir pas dormi.*

7) Without a verb, the negatives stand without *ne,* as:

pas à la fois, not at once.
pas moi, not I.
pas beaucoup, pas trop, pas tant, pas aujourd'hui, etc.

8) *Non plus,* nor . . . either, requires the full negation *ne — pas* before it, as:

Je ne le veux pas non plus, nor will I have it either.

9) If nor — either is connected only with a noun or pronoun, without a verb, the noun or the pronoun is preceded, in French, by *ni*, as:

nor Charles either, *ni Charles non plus.*

10) Observe the expression *ne — que* for only, as:
Je n'ai que deux sœurs, I have only two sisters.
Il n'a qu'un morceau de pain, he has only a piece of bread.
Elle n'a apporté qu'une assiette, she brought but one plate.
L'enfant n'a que dix ans, the child is only ten years old.
Il n'est que six heures, it is only six o'clock.

III. PREPOSITIONS.

A preposition serves to express the relation which certain words bear to one another. It always precedes, in French, the word which it governs, and must be repeated before every one.

Prepositions are indeclinable, and may be divided into the three following classes:

1) Simple Prepositions.

à (before *le* = *au*; before *les* = *aux*), at, in, to.
après, (denoting time), after.
avant (denoting time), before.
avec, with.
chez, at, at the house of.
contre, against.
dans, in, into.
de (before *le* = *du*; before *les* = *des*), of, from.
depuis, since.
derrière, behind.
dès, from.
devant (denoting place), before.
pendant, *durant*, during.
en, in, within, into, to.
entre, between.
envers, to, towards.
hors, *hormis*, except, besides. save.
outre, besides.
malgré, in spite of.
moyennant, by means of.
par, trough, by.
parmi, among.
pour, for.
sans, without, but for.
sous, under.
selon, *suivant*, according to.
sur, on, upon. *vers*, towards.

2) Compound Prepositions which govern the Accusative.

D'après, according to.
d'avec, *de chez*, from.
de derrière, from behind.
de devant, from before.
de dessus, from off.
de dessous, from under.
de par, in the name of.

par-dessus, over.
à travers, trough.
jusqu'à, till, as far as.
jusque dans, } as far as.
jusque sur, }
(*il y a*, ago),

3) Such as govern the Genitive.

à côté de, by, beside.
à cause de, on account of.
au travers de, through.
au milieu de, in the middle of.
au lieu de, instead of.
au haut de, on the top of.
du haut de, from above.
hors de, out of.
au dehors de, outside, without.
autour de, around, about.
près de, } by, next to.
auprès de, } near, close to.
au-devant de, before, to meet.
au-dessus de, above, upon.
au-dessous de, below, under.
loin de, far from.
au moyen de, by means of.
en deça de, on this side of.
par delà de, } on that side.
au delà de, }
vis-à-vis de, } opposite (to).
en face de, }
le long de, along.
à l'égard de, with regard to.
faute de, for want of.
en vertu de, in consequence of.

Examples.

à.

A la porte, at the door. *J'écris à mon fils*, I write to my son. *Elle est à la maison* (or *chez elle*), she is at home. *Au jardin*, in the garden. *à la main*, in the hand. *à Paris*, at Paris. *à la campagne*, in the country. *Je vais à Berlin*, I am going to Berlin. *A six heures*, at six o'clock.

Chez, de chez.

Il est chez moi, he is with me. *Je vais chez Monsieur A.*, I am going to Mr. A.'s. *Ma tante demeure chez un libraire*, my aunt lives at the house of a bookseller. *Je viens de chez mon oncle*, I come from my uncle's.

Près de, auprès de.

Près de (or *auprès de*) *la colline*, near the hill. *J'ai gagné près de cent florins*, I have won nearly a hundred florins.

Dans, en.

Dans la chambre, in the room. *Dans la main*, in the hand. *Dans la prairie*, on the meadow. *Dans une île*, on an island. *Dans mon voyage*, on my journey. *En été*, in summer. *En Italie*, in *or* to Italy. *En France*, in *or* to France.

NB. In before personal pronouns, is translated *en: en lui, en nous etc.*

Avant, devant.

Avant le lever du soleil, before sun-rise. *Avant la leçon,* before the lesson. *Devant la porte,* before the door. *Devant les ennemis,* before the ennemy.

Après, selon, suivant.

Après la bataille, after the battle. *Après vous,* after you. *Selon* (or *suivant*) *le temps,* according to the weather. *Selon les circonstances,* according to circumstances.

Contre, envers, vers.

Il poussa contre la porte, he pushed against the door. *Le père est fâché contre son fils,* the father is angry with his son. *Soyez polis envers vos maîtres,* be polite to your masters. *Vers le soir,* towards (the) evening. *Vers la montagne (direction),* towards the mountain.

De.

J'ai reçu ce livre de ma mère, I received this book from my mother. *Nous venons du spectacle,* we come from the theatre. *De qui parlez-vous?* whom are you speaking of? *Je suis content de votre travail,* I am satisfied with your work. *Couvert de neige,* covered with snow. *De cette manière,* in this manner. *La bataille d'Austerlitz,* the battle of Austerlitz.

Pour.

Ce cadeau est pour vous, this present is for you. *Pour combien de temps,* for how long? *Pour toujours,* for ever. — *Pour* with the verb *partir* is rendered for or to: *Je pars pour l'Amérique,* I set out for America. *Charles est parti pour Munich,* Charles has gone to Munich.

Par.

La reine a passé par cette ville, the queen has passed through this town. *Je l'ai appris par le courrier,* I have learnt it from the messenger. *Par ordre du roi,* by the king's command. *Cet homme a voyagé par terre et par mer,* this man has travelled by land and by sea. *Par faiblesse,* by (from) weakness. *Par méprise* or *par mégarde,* by mistake. *Mener par la main,* to lead by the hand. *Jeter par la fenêtre,* to throw out of the window.

Sur.

Grimper sur un arbre, to climb up a tree. *Ecrivez sur ce papier,* write on this paper. *Sur les bords du Rhin,* on the banks of the Rhine. *J'ai de l'argent sur moi,* I have some money about me.

Sous, au-dessous. — Entre, parmi.

Le chien est sous la table, the dog lies under the table. *Porter sous le bras,* to carry under the arm. *Cet enfant est au-dessous de dix ans,* the child is under ten years. *Au-dessous du pont,* below the bridge. *Il y a une grande différence entre les deux frères,* there is a great difference between the two brothers. *Entre autres,* among others. *Entre la ville et la rivière,* between the town and the river. *Parmi les ouvriers,* amongst the workmen. *Parmi les vivants,* among the living.

Note. Many prepositions come in English after a verb making a part of its signification. These must not be expressed in French as: to pull down *démolir,* to look at *regarder,* to wait for *attendre,* to get up *se lever,* etc.

IV. CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are used to connect either words or sentences. They are either simple or compound; the simple consist of one word for each clause, the compound are formed of two separate words.

1) Simple Conjunctions.

Et, and.
et — et, both — and.
aussi, also, too.
tantôt — tantôt, sometimes — sometimes.
ou, or.
ou — ou, either — or.
plus — plus, the more — the more.
plus —, moins, the more — the less.
moins — moins, the less — the less.
autant — autant, as much as.
soit — soit, be it — or.
ni — ni, neither — nor.
comme, as.
comment, how?
or, now.
donc, consequently.
donc, then.
ainsi, thus, so.
puis, alors, then.
que, that.
que, than (after a comparative).
car, for.
mais, but.
toutefois, cependant, however.
pourtant, yet, still.
autrement, sans cela, otherwise, else.
néanmoins, nevertheless.
d'ailleurs, besides, moreover.
si, if, whether.
sinon, if not.
quand, when?
où, where?
d'où, whence?
puisque, since, as.
lorsque, when, as.
quoique (with the Subj.), though.
pourquoi, why?
savoir, videlicet, namely.
pour, in order to.

Remarks.

1) Among these simple conjunctions there is only one which governs the Subjunctive mood, viz.: *quoique*, though or although, and one used with the Infinitive, viz.: *pour*, in order to or simply to. Ex.:

Quoique je sois malade, though I am ill.

J'ai dit cela pour vous blâmer.
I said so (in order) to blame you.

2) *Si* denotes a condition or supposition: *s'il vient*, if he comes; *si vous voulez*, if you like. When *si* is followed by an Imperfect or Pluperfect, these tenses are always in the Indicative mood, as:

if I had, *si j'avais;* if I were, *si j'étais.*
if I had seen him, *si je l'avais vu.*

Note. The *i* in *si* is cut off before *il* and *ils*, but nowhere else, as: *s'il avait*, — but *si elle avait*, etc.

3) *Quand*, on the contrary, denotes time and corresponds with the English when: *quand je le vis*, when I saw him.

4) The conjunction *ni — ni* requires *ne* before its verb, and the noun which follows it, commonly takes no article, as:

Je n'ai ni père ni mère, I have neither father nor mother.

5) The conjunction *que* serves to connect two ideas so as to form of the two one sentence, as:

Je crois que vous avez raison, I believe you are right.

In English the conjunction that is almost always understood, whereas *que* is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the proposition, as:

Je crois que vous avez raison et que vous réussirez.
I think you are right and that you will succeed.

6) When a conjunction governs several verbs, it is placed before the first verb only, and *que* is used instead before the other verbs. Ex.:

As he is diligent and takes pains.
Comme il est appliqué et qu'il prend de la peine.

If you are diligent and take pains.
Si vous êtes appliqué et que vous preniez de la peine.

2) Compound Conjunctions.

(Conjunctive phrases).

These conjunctions consist of at least two words. Most of them are adverbs or prepositions attended by *que* or *de*. Instead of dividing them according to their

meaning into copulative, disjunctive, adversative, conclusive etc., it will be much more important for the learner to understand, that different conjunctions require different moods of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *Indicative mood*, others in the *Infinitive*, and others again in the *Subjunctive*.

1) Compound Conjunctions with the *Indicative*.

Ou bien, or, else.
ni — non plus, neither . . nor either.
au contraire, on the contrary.
non seulement, — mais encore, not only — but also.
de plus, moreover.
autant que, as much as.
après que, after, after that.
quand même, although.
si toutefois, if however.
c'est-à-dire, namely.
parce que, *c'est que*, because.
tandis que, whereas.
pendant que, while, whilst.
tant que, as long as.
aussitôt que, *dès que*, as soon as.
de même que, *ainsi que*, as.
du reste, *au reste*, however.
de là, hence it follows.
à peine —, que, scarcely—, when.
c'est pourquoi, therefore.
par conséquent, consequently.
comme si, as if.
de même, thus, in the same way.
sans cela, otherwise, else.
depuis que, since.
tout — que, however . . ., as.

2) Conjunctions with the *Infinitive mood*.

Afin de, *pour*, in order to, to.
à moins de, unless.
avant de, before.
au lieu de, instead of.
de peur de, *de crainte de*, for fear of.
loin de, far from.
plûtot que de, rather than.

3) Conjunctions with the *Subjunctive mood*.

Afin que, *pour que*, that, in order that.
avant que, before.
à moins que, *que — ne*, unless, till.
bien que, *quoique*, though. altough.
jusqu'à ce que, till, until.
loin que, far from.
non que, not as if.
non obstant que, notwithstanding that.
pour peu que, however little.
pourvu que, provided (that).
quelque — que, however . . . ., though.
sans que, without that.
si ce n'est que, unless, till.
soit que, whether — or.

4) Besides the above mentioned conjunctions, there are other conjunctive expressions *(locutions conjonctives)*, which have been borrowed from other classes of words and to which the conjunction *que* is added. Such are:

à condition que, on condition that . . .
**de peur que,* } lest.
**de crainte que,* }
de manière que, } so as to, so that . . .
de or *en sorte que,* }
**au cas que,* in case that . . .
**supposé que,* supposing that . . .
**malgré que,* for all that, notwithstanding.
toutes les fois que, as often as, every time.
peut-être que, perhaps that . . .
attendu que, considering that . . .
à ce que, according as, as far as, etc.

NB. Those marked with an asterisk* govern the Subjunctive.

PART III.

Lists of useful words and phrases to be committed to memory.

1. L'univers. The universe.

Le monde, the world.
le ciel, the sky.
le soleil, the sun.
les planètes, the planets.
une étoile, a star.
la lune, the moon.
le feu, the fire.
l'air, (m.) the air.
la terre, the earth.
l'eau, (f.) the water.
la mer, the sea.
une rivière, a river.
un ruisseau, a brook.
un rocher, a rock.
une île, an island.
la montagne, the mountain.
la colline, the hill.
la vallée, the valley.
la plaine, the plain.
la forêt, the forest.
le chemin, the road, way.
la route, the highway.
le sable, the sand.
le métal, the metal.
l'or, (m.) gold.
l'argent, (m.) silver (money).
le cuivre, copper.
le fer, iron.
l'acier, steel.
l'étain, (m.) tin.
le plomb, lead.

2. Les plantes. Plants.

Le champ de blé, corn-field.
le blé, corn.
le seigle, rye.
le froment, wheat.
l'orge, (f.) barley.
l'avoine, (f.) oats.
la farine, flour.
le riz, rice.
les pois, (m.) peas.
les petits ports, green-peas.
les haricots, (m.) beans.
le blé de Turkie, Indian corn.
le houblon, hops.
le lin, flax.
le chanvre, hemp.
la toile, linen.
le tabac, tobacco.
fumer, to smoke.
les légumes, (m.) vegetables.
des asperges, (f.) asparagus.
les épinards, (m.) spinage.
le chou, cabbage.
les fleurs, flowers.
des choux-fleurs, cauliflower.
le navet, turnip.
la carotte, carrot.
la pomme de terre, potato.
la rave, radish.
des radis, (m.) salmon radishes.
la laitue, lettuce.
la salade, salade.
le concombre, cucumber.

la citrouille, pumpkin.
un oignon, onion.
le persil, parsley.
le cresson, cress.
le trèfle, clover.
l'herbe, (f.) grass.
le foin, hay.

3. Arbres et fruits. Trees and fruits.

L'arbre, (m.) the tree.
l'arbuste, (m.) shrub.
la racine, root.
le tronc, trunk.
la branche, branch.
le rameau, twig.
la feuille, leaf.
le bois, wood.
le chêne, oak.
le gland, acorn.
le hêtre, beech.
le sapin, fir-tree.
le pin, pine.
le bouleau, birch.
le peuplier, poplar.
le tilleul, lime-tree.
le saule, willow.
l'arbre fruitier, fruit-tree.
le pommier, apple-tree.
la pomme, apple.
le poirier, pear-tree.
la poire, the pear.
le cerisier, cherry-tree.
la cerise, cherry.
le noyer, walnut-tree.
la noix, walnut.
la noisette, hazel-nut.
le figuier, fig-tree.
la figue, fig.
le châtaignier, chestnut-tree.
la châtaigne, chestnut.
l'abricotier, apricot-tree.
l'abricot, apricot.
le prunier, plum-tree.
la prune, plum.
la vigne, vine.
le raisin, grape.
la groseille, currant.
la groseille verte, goose berry.
le framboisier, raspberry-shrub.
la framboise, raspberry.
la fraise, strawberry.

4. Quadrupèdes. Quadrupeds.

Le règne animal, the animal kingdom.
l'animal, (m.) animal.
un animal domestique, domestic animal.
le cheval, horse.
un cheval de selle, saddle horse.
un cheval blanc, a white horse.
le cheval noir, black horse.
une jument, mare.
le poulain, filly; colt.
le bœuf, ox.
le taureau, bull.
la vache, cow.
la corne, horn.
le sanglier, wild-boar.
le cerf, stag.
le bois, antlers.
le chevreuil, deer.
le lièvre, hare.
le lapin, rabbit.
la taupe, mole.
l'écureuil, squirrel.
le rat, rat.
la souris, mouse.
le chat, cat.
le veau, calf.
le chien, dog.
le castor, beaver.
la peau, skin.
le cuir, leather.
l'âne, donkey, ass.
l'ânesse, she-ass.
la chèvre, goat.
le bouc, he-goat.
la brebis, sheep.
le mouton, ram.
l'agneau, (m.) lamb.

la laine, wool.
le cochon, pig.
le renard, fox.
le loup, wolf.
l'ours, (m.) bear.
le singe, monkey, ape.
le lion, lion.
le tigre, tiger.
le léopard, leopard.
la panthère, panther.
l'hyène, (f.) hyena.
le renne, rein-deer.
le chameau, camel.
l'éléphant, (m.) elephant.
le rhinocéros, rhinoceros.

5. Oiseaux. Birds.

L'oiseau, (m.) the bird.
l'aile, (f.) wing.
une plume, feather.
le bec, beak, bill.
le nid, nest.
l'œuf, (m.) egg.
la coquille, egg-shell.
la poule, hen.
le poulet, pullet, fowl.
le coq, cock.
le canard, duck.
l'oie, (f.) goose.
la basse-cour, poultry-yard.
le pigeon, la colombe, pigeon.
le cygne, swan.
l'oiseau chanteur, singing-bird.
la caille, quail.
l'alouette, (f.) lark.
le merle, thrush.
le rossignol, nightingale.
la fauvette, hedge-sparrow.
le serin, green-finch.
le chardonneret, gold-finch.
serin de Canarie, canary.
le rouge-gorge, robin.
le colibri, l'oiseau-mouche, humming-bird.
le moineau, sparrow.
l'hirondelle, (f.) swallow.
le coucou, cuckoo.
la pie, magpie, jay.
le corbeau, raven.
le hibou, owl.
le paon, peacock.
le faisan, pheasant.
la perdrix, partridge.
le bécasse, snipe.
la cigogne, stork.
le perroquet, parrot.
le faucon, falcon.
l'oiseau de proie, bird of prey.
le vautour, vulture, hawk.
l'aigle, (m.) eagle.
l'autruche, (f.) ostruch.

6. Poissons, reptiles et insectes. Fish, reptiles and insects.

Le poisson, the fish.
la baleine, whale.
le poisson de mer, sea-fish.
l'écaille, (f.) scale.
le requin, shark.
la morue, stock-fish.
un hareng, herring.
le saumon, salmon.
la truite, trout.
l'anguille, (f.) eel.
la carpe, carp.
le brochet, pike.
une sardine, sardine, sprat.
le filet, net.
l'hameçon, (m.) fishing-hook.
la ligne, fishing-rod.
pêcher, to fish.
le pêcheur, fisherman.
la pêche, fishing.
le homard, crab, lobster.
l'écrevisse, (f.) craw-fish.
l'huître, (f.) oyster.
une tortue, tortoise, turtle.
un lézard, lizard.
un serpent, serpent, snake.
le ver, worm.
le ver à soie, silk-worm.
la soie, silk.
la fourmi, ant.
l'araignée, (f.) spider.

le hanneton, cock-chafer.
la chenille, caterpillar.
le papillon, butterfly.
le crapaud, toad.
la grenouille, frog.
la sangsue, leech.
l'abeille, bee.
le miel, honey.
la cire, wax.
la guêpe, wasp.
la sauterelle, grasshopper.
le frelon, hornet.

7. De l'homme. Man.

L'âme, (f.) the soul.
l'esprit, (m.) spirit, mind.
le corps, body.
la chair, flesh.
la peau, skin.
le sang, blood.
la veine, vein.
la tête, head.
les cheveux, (m.) hair.
le front, forehead.
les traits, (m.) features.
le visage, face.
le sens, sense.
l'œil, eye.
l'organe, (m.) organ.
les sourcils, (m.) eyebrows.
les paupières, (f.) eyelids.
les cils, (m.) eyelashes.
le nez, nose.
l'adorat, (m.) smell.
les joues, (f.) cheeks.
l'oreille, (f.) ear.
la bouche, mouth.
la dent, tooth.
la langue, tongue.
le menton, chin.
la barbe, beard.
le cou, throat.
la nuque, neck.
les épaules, (f.) shoulders.
le dos, back.
la poitrine, breast.
le ventre, belly.
le bras, arm.
la main, hand.
la main droite, right hand.
le doigt, finger.
le pouce, thumb.
l'ongle, (f.) nail.
la cuisse, thigh.
le genou, knee.
la jambe, leg.
le mollet, calf of the leg.
le pied, foot.
le doigts du pied, toes.
les os, bones.
les nerfs, (m.) nerves.
un muscle, muscle.
l'estomac, (m.) stomach.
le poumon, lungs.
le foie, liver.
les reins, (m.) kidney, loins.
le cœur, heart.

8. Des vêtements. Clothing.

Un vêtement, a garment.
le tailleur, tailor.
le drap, cloth.
l'étoffe, (f.) stuff.
un habit, dress.
le manteau, cloak, mantle.
le paletot, over-coat.
la redingote, frock-coat.
l'habit, (m.) coat.
la manche, sleeve.
le collet, collar.
le bouton, button.
la boutonnière, button-hole.
la doublure, lining.
la poche, pocket.
un gilet, waistcoat.
la cravate, neck-tie.
un pantalon, trowsers.
le caleçon, drawers.
la chemise, shirt.
la toile, linen.
le col, shirt-collar.

le ligne, linen.
la couturière, dress-maker.
le mouchoir, pocket-handkerchief.
le foulard, silk pocket-handkerchief.
le bas, stocking.
une paire de bas, pair of stockings.
la laine, wool.
le coton, cotton.
la maille, stitch.
les jarretières, (f.) garters.
les chaussons, socks.
le soulier, shoe.
une paire de bottes, pair of boots.
les pantoufles, slippers.
le chapeau, hat.
un chapeau de paille, straw-hat.
le gant, glove.
la montre, watch.
la chaîne de montre, watch-chain.
la canne, walking-stick.
le parapluie, umbrella.
le parasol, parasol.
le bonnet, cap.
un fichu, neck-handkerchief.
un châle, shawl.
la robe, gown, dress.
le jupon, petticoat.
le corset, stays.
un tablier, apron.
le ruban, ribbon.
la ceinture, shas, girdle.
un bracelet, bracelet.
une broche, brooch.
un collier, neck-lace.
les boucles d'oreilles, ear-rings.
la bague, ring.
la coiffure, head-dress.
une épingle à cheveux, hair-pin.
une boucle, a curl.
la brosse à cheveux, hair-brush.
brosser, to brush.
le peigne, comb.
peigner, to comb.
la pommade, pomatum.
la poudre à dents, tooth-powder.
la brosse à dents, tooth-brush.
le savon, soap.
le lavoir, wash-hand-basin.

9. De la famille. The family.

La famille, the family.
un père de famille, father of a family.
le chef, head of the family.
les parents, parents.
les ancêtres, ancestors.
le grand'-père, grandfather.
la grand'-mère, grandmother.
le père, father.
la mère, mother.
l'oncle, uncle.
la tante, aunt.
l'époux, mari, husband.
l'épouse, wife.
le beau-père, father-in-law.
la belle-mère, mother-in-law.
l'enfant, child.
le fils, son.
la fille, daughter.
le petit-fils, grand-son.
la petite-fille, grand-daughter.
le gendre, son-in-law.
la belle-fille, daughter-in-law.
le frère, brother.
la sœur, sister.
le beau-frère, brother-in-law.
la belle-sœur, sister-in-law.
le neveu, nephew.
la nièce, niece.
le cousin / *la cousine* } cousin.
le garçon, boy.
la fille, girl, maiden.
le fiancé, bridegroom.
la fiancée, bride.
les noces, wedding.

le mariage, marriage.
le veuf, widower.
la veuve, widow.
l'orephelin(e), orphan.

10. De la demeure. Dwelling.

L'appartement, the appartment.
la demeure, dwelling.
un édifice, building.
un palais, palace.
une maison, house.
le toit, roof.
le grenier, loft, garret.
l'escalier, (m.) stairs.
le rez-de-chaussée, ground-floor.
le premier étage, the first-floor.
le second étage, second story.
la chambre, room, chamber.
la chambre à coucher, bed-room.
la salle à manger, dining-room.
le salon, drawing-room.
un cabinet, cabinet.
la porte, door.
la serrure, lock.
la clef, key.
la fenêtre, window.
le contrevent, shutter.
le plancher, floor.
le plafond, ceiling.
le mur, wall.
la sonnette, bell.
un rideau, curtain.
le tableau, picture.
un miroir, looking-glass.
les meubles (m.) furniture.
l'armoire, (f.) wardrobe.
la commode, chest of drawers.
le tiroir, the drawer.
la table, table.
la chaise, chair.
le fauteuil, arm-chair.
le sofa, sofa.
le tapis, carpet.
le lit, bed.
la paillasse, straw-bed.
le matelas, mattress.
l'oreiller, (m.) pillow.
un drap de lit, sheet.
la couverture, blanket.
le berceau, cradle.
la table de nuit, night-table.
une chandelle, candle, light.
éclairer, to light.
un chandelier, candlestick.
une bougie, wax-candle.
les mouchettes, (f.) snuffers.
les allumettes, (f.) matches.
une lampe, lamp.
le poêle, stove.

11. De la cuisine. The kitchen.

La cuisine, the kitchen.
l'office, (f.) pantry.
les viandes, food, dishes.
le cuisinier, *la cuisinière*, cook.
le foyer, fire-place.
la cheminée, chimney.
le feu, fire.
la fumée, smoke.
les charbons, coals.
les bois, wood.
la cendre, ashes.
les pincettes, (f.) tongs.
une poêle, pan.
une casserole, sauce-pan.
frire, to cook, fry.
le pot, pot.
le pot à l'eau, water-pot.
une cruche à eau, jug, pitcher.
une cuvette, water-pail.
la cuiller à pot, ladle.
un plat, dish.
une assiette, plate.
la soupière, soup-tureen.
la vaisselle, vessel, plate.
le saladier, salad-dish.
la cuiller, spoon.
la fourchette, fork.

le couteau, knife.
la serviette, napkin.
la nappe, table-cloth.
le sel, salt.
la salière, salt-cellar.
le poivre, pepper.
la poivrière, pepper-box.
la moutarde, mustard.
le moutardier, mustard-pot.
le vinaigre, vinegar.
l'huile, (f.) oil.
l'huilier, (m.) oil-bottle.
la bouteille, bottle.
la carafe, water-bottle.
le bouchon, cork.
le tire-bouchon, cork-screw.
le verre, glass.
la tasse, cup.
le sucre, sugar.
le sucrier, sugar-basin.
la cafetière, coffee-pot.
la théière, tea-pot.
la bouilloire, tea-kettle.

12. Aliments et boissons. Food and drink.

Les aliments, (m.) dishes, meats.
les mets, (m.) food, meats.
les vivres, (m.) victuals.
la nourriture, food.
la faim, hunger.
l'appétit, (m.) appetite.
la soif, thirst.
un repas, meal.
le déjeuner, breakfast.
le dîner, dinner.
le goûter, lunch.
le souper, supper.
le pain, bread.
du pain blanc, white bread.
du pain frais, new bread.
du pain rassis, stale bread.
la viande, meat.
du bœuf, beef.
le bouilli, boiled-meat.
le bouillon, broth.
la soupe, soup.
le potage au riz, rice-soup.
du veau, veal.
du veau roti, roast veal.
les côtelettes, (f.) chops, cutlets.
du mouton, mutton.
un gigot, leg of mutton.
du porc, pork.
le lard, bacon.
du jambon, ham.
une saucisse, sausage.
un boudin, blood-pudding.
du gibier, game.
du chevreuil, venison.
du lièvre, roast-hare.
de la volaille, poultry.
du poisson, fish.
une omelette, pancake, omelet.
les légumes, (m.) vegetables.
des œufs, (m.) eggs.
des boulettes, (f.) dumplings.
des vermicelles, (m.) vermicelli.
le dessert, dessert.
le gâteau, cake.
le gâteau aux pommes, apple-tart.
de la pâtisserie, pastry.
une tarte, tart.
des gaufres, (f.) wafers.
des bonbons, (m.) sweets.
du fruit, fruit.
des amandes, (f.) almonds.
des raisins de Corinthe, currants.
de la confiture, sweet-meats.
le beurre, butter.
une beurrée, bread and butter.
le fromage, cheese.
du fromage de Suisse, Swiss cheese.
la boisson, drink.
le vin, wine.
la bière, beer.
l'eau, (f.) *water*.
l'eau-de-vie, brandy.
le punch, punch.

la limonade, lemonade.
le café, coffee.
le thé, tea.
le chocolat, chocolate.
le lait, milk.
la crème, cream.
prendre du café, to take coffee.

13. Le temps. Time.

La saison, the season.
le printemps, spring.
l'été, (m.) summer.
l'automne, (m. f.) autumn.
l'hiver, (m.) winter.
l'an, l'année, year.
six mois, half-year.
trois mois, quarter.
un mois, month.
quinze, jours, fortnight.
janvier, January.
février, February.
mars, March.
avril, April.
mai, May.
juin, June.
juillet, July.
août, August.
septembre, September.
octobre, October.
november, November.
décembre, December.
une semaine, a week.
dimanche, Sunday.
lundi, Monday.
mardi, Tuesday.
mercredi, Wednesday.
jeudi, Thursday.
vendredi, Friday.
samedi, Saturday.
il y a huit jours, a week ago.
le jour, la journée, day.
le matin, morning.
le midi, mid-day.
le soir, la soirée, evening.
le coucher du soleil, sun-set.
la nuit, night.
minuit, mid-night.
le lendemain, the following day.
aujourd'hui, to-day.
hier, yesterday.
avant-hier, day before yesterday.
demain, to-morrow.
après-demain, day after to-morrow.
une heure, hour.
une demi-heure, half an hour.
un quart d'heure, quarter of an hour.
la minute, minute.
un instant, moment, moment, instant.

14. Du temps. The Weather.

Le temps, the weather.
le beau temps, fine weather.
il fait mauvais temps, it is bad weather.
le vent, wind.
le vent du nord, north wind.
le vent du sud, south wind.
une tempête, storm.
la pluie, rain.
une averse, shower.
un arc-en-ciel, rain-bow.
le nuage, cloud.
un orage, thunderstorm.
le tonnerre, thunder.
l'éclair, (m.) / *la foudre*, } lightning.
il fait des éclairs, it lightens.
la chaleur, heat.
le froid, cold.
la température, temperature.
le thermomètre, thermometer.
le degré, degree.
la gelée, frost.
la glace, ice.
la neige, snow.
des flocons de neige, snow-fleaks.
une pelote de neige, snow-ball.
les patins, (m.) skates.

patiner, to skate.
le traîneau, sledge, sled.
la grêle, hail.
le brouillard, fog, mist.
le dégel, thaw.
la gelée blanche, hoar frost.

15. De l'instruction. Instruction.

L'université, the university.
le cours, lecture.
le professeur, professor.
l'étudiant, student.
le collége, college.
l'école, (f.) school.
l'écolier, / *l'écolière*, } pupil.
le thème, exercise.
la leçon, lesson.
la version, / *la traduction*, } translation.
le dictionnaire, dictionary.
une grammaire, grammar.
une carte géographique, map.
un modèle, copy.
un cahier, copy-book.
un cahier d'écriture, writing-book.
l'écriture, (f.) writing.
la copie, copy.
l'écritoire, (f.) writing-stand.
l'encre, (f.), ink.
l'encrier, m. inkstand.
la plume, pen.
le papier, paper.
du papier à écrire, writing p.
du papier brouillard, blotting p.
une ardoise, slate.
un crayon d'ardoise, slate pencil.
un crayon, lead-pencil.
un porte-crayon, pencil-case.
l'étui à plume, pen-case.
le tableau noir, back-board.
la craie, chalk.
l'éponge, (f.) sponge.
un porte-feuille, portfolio.
une règle, ruler.
un canif, penknife.
une lettre, letter.
du papier à lettre, note paper.
un billet, note, ticket.
l'adresse, (f.) address.
une enveloppe, envelope.
le cachet, seal.
le pain à cacheter, wafer.
la cire à cacheter, sealing-wax.
un timbre-poste, stamp.
affranchir, to pay the postage.

Phrases for French Conversation.

V.

1. M.B.F. 201-202

1 Avez-vous un livre?	Have you a book?
2 Oui, j'ai un livre.	Yes, I have a book.
3 Quel livre avez-vous?	What book have you?
4 J'ai votre livre.	I have your book.
5 As-tu ma plume?	Hast thou my pen?
6 Non, je n'ai pas ta plume.	No, I have not thy pen.
7 Quelle plume as-tu?	What pen hast thou?
8 J'ai ma plume.	I have my pen.
9 N'est-ce pas la mienne?	Is it not mine?
10 Non, ce n'est pas la tienne.	No, it is not thine.

ez-vous votre crayon?	Have you your pencil?
n, je n'ai pas mon crayon.	No, I have not my pencil.
el crayon avez-vous donc?	What pencil have you then?
i le crayon de ma sœur.	I have my sister's pencil.
mbien de livres avez-vous?	How many books have you?
i deux livres.	I have two.
i a une canne?	Who has a stick?
jeune garçon a une canne.	The young boy has a stick.
'a ton père?	What has thy father?
a deux ou trois cannes.	He has two or three sticks.
tre père a-t-il un ami?	Has your father a friend?
i, mon père a beaucoup d'amis.	Yes, my father has many friends.
mbien d'amis avez-vous?	How many friends have you?
i cinq ou six amis.	I have five or six friends.
tre maître a-t-il un chapeau?	Has your master a hat?
i, il a un chapeau de paille.	Yes, he has a straw hat.

2.

ez-vous du pain?	Have you any bread?
i, j'ai un morceau de pain.	Yes, I have a piece of bread.
pain est-il bon?	Is the bread good?
i, il est très bon.	Yes, it is very good.
ez-vous aussi du beurre?	Have you also some butter?
n, je n'ai pas de beurre.	No, I have no butter.
ulez-vous du beurre?	Will you have some butter?
l vous plaît.	If you please.
petit garçon a-t-il aussi du pain?	Has the little boy also any bread?
on, il n'a point de pain. / on, il n'*en* a point.	No, he has none.
n veut-il pas?	Does he not want any?
en a déjà eu; il l'a déjà mangé.	He has had some already; he has already eaten ir.
t-il eu assez de pain?	Has he had enough bread?
en a eu un gros morceau.	He has had a large piece.
fromage est-il bon aussi?	Is the cheese also good?
ne le trouve pas bon.	I do not find it good.
ulez-vous du lait?	Will you have some milk?
nnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît.	Give me some, if you please.
i veut du lait?	Who wants some milk?
s enfants veulent du lait.	The children want some milk.
ez-vous du vin?	Have you any wine?
i, nous en avons.	Yes, we have some.
el vin avez-vous?	What kind of wine have you?
us en avons du rouge et lu blanc.	We have both red and white wine.

1 Voulez-vous un verre de vin?	Will you have a glass of wine?
2 Donnez-moi une bouteille de vin.	Give me a bottle of wine.
3 Voulez-vous du vin rouge?	Will you have red wine?
4 Non, donnez-m'en du blanc.	No, give me white.
5 Trouvez-vous le vin bon?	Do you find the wine good?
6 Il n'est pas très bon.	It is not very good.
7 Voulez-vous me donner un verre d'eau?	Will you give me a glass of water?
8 Voici un verre d'eau fraîche.	Here is a glass of fresh water.

8.

9 Qu'avez-vous perdu?	What have you lost?
10 J'ai perdu ma bourse.	I have lost my purse.
11 Qui a perdu quelque chose?	Who has lost anything?
12 Mon ami a perdu quelque chose.	My friend has lost something.
13 Qu'a-t-il perdu?	What has he lost?
14 Il a perdu sa bague.	He has lost his ring.
15 Qui a trouvé une bague?	Who has found a ring?
16 Un petit garçon a trouvé une bague.	A little boy has found a ring.
17 Est-ce là votre bague?	Is that your ring?
18 Oui, c'est ma bague.	Yes, that is my ring.
19 Avez-vous vu mon parapluie?	Have you seen my umbrella?
20 Non, mais j'ai vu votre parasol.	No, but I have seen your parasol.
21 Qu'avez-vous acheté?	What have you bought?
22 J'ai acheté du papier.	I have bought some paper.
23 Quelle sorte de papier avez-vous acheté?	What sort of paper have you bought?
24 J'ai acheté du papier à lettres.	I have bought some letter paper.
25 Pour qui l'avez-vous acheté?	For whom have you bought it?
26 Je l'ai acheté pour ma mère.	I have bought it for my mother.
27 Avez-vous vendu votre cheval?	Have you sold your horse?
28 Oui, je l'ai vendu.	Yes, I have sold it.
29 A qui avez-vous vendu votre maison?	To whom have you sold your house?
30 Ma maison? Je ne l'ai pas encore vendue.	My house? I have not yet sold it.
31 Mais qu'avez-vous donc vendu?	But what have you sold then?
32 J'ai vendu la maison de mon oncle.	I have sold my uncle's house.
33 Avez-vous reçu une lettre?	Have you received a letter?
34 Oui, j'ai reçu une lettre.	Yes, I have received one.
35 De qui avez-vous reçu une lettre?	From whom have you received one?
36 J'en ai reçu une de ma nièce Julie.	I have received one from my niece Julia.

[illegible]

5.

1 Avez-vous vu votre ami aujourd'hui?	Have you seen your friend to-day?
2 Non, je ne l'ai pas vu aujourd'hui.	No, I did not see him to-day
3 L'avez-vous vu hier?	Did you see him yesterday?
4 Oui, je l'ai vu hier.	Yes, I saw him yesterday
5 Qui a vu la montre de Charles?	Who has seen Charles's watch?
6 Je ne l'ai pas vue.	I have not seen it.
7 Est-ce une montre d'or?	Is it a gold watch?
8 Non c'est une montre d'argent.	No, it is a silver watch.
9 A-t-il aussi une chaîne de montre?	Has he also a watch chain?
10 Oui, il a une chaîne d'or.	Yes, he has a gold chain.
11 Avez-vous fait votre thème?	Have you done your exercise?
12 Oui, je l'ai fait.	Yes, I have done it.

5.

13 As-tu faim?	Are you hungry?
14 Avez-vous faim?	
15 Oui, j'ai faim (j'ai grand faim).	Yes, I am very hungry.
16 Avez-vous soif?	Are you thirsty?
17 Oui, nous avons soif.	Yes, we are thirsty.
18 Avez-vous raison ou tort?	Are you right or wrong?
19 Nous avons toujours raison.	We are always right.
20 Qui a eu tort.	Who was wrong?
21 L'écolier a eu tort?	The pupil was wrong.
22 Qui a eu raison?	Who was right?
23 Le maître a eu raison.	The master was right.
24 Les enfants ont-ils faim ou soif?	Are the children hungry or thirsty?
25 Ils ont faim et soif.	They are both hungry and thirsty.
26 N'ont-ils encore rien mangé?	Have they not eaten anything yet?
27 Ils ont mangé un petit morceau de pain.	They have eaten a small piece of bread.
28 Qui a mangé ma pomme?	Who has eaten my apple?
29 Louis a mangé ta pomme.	Louis has eaten it.

6.

30 Connaissez-vous ce monsieur?	Do you know this gentleman
31 Non, je ne le connais pas.	No, I do not know him.
32 Qui est-ce?	Who is he?
33 C'est un étranger.	He is a foreigner.
34 Est-ce un Français ou un Anglais?	Is he a Frenchman or an Englishman?

1 Ce n'est *ni* un Français, *ni* un Anglais; c'est un Italien.	He is neither French nor English; he is an Italian.
2 Parle-t-il français?	Does he speak French?
3 Oui, monsieur, il parle bien français.	Yes, he speaks French well.
4 Parle-t-il aussi anglais?	Does he also speak English?
5 Je ne crois pas.	I believe not.
6 Savez-vous l'italien, mademoiselle?	Do you understand Italian, Miss?
7 Je le parle un peu.	I speak it a little.
8 Apprenez-vous *le* français?	Are you learning French?
9 Oui, je l'apprends.	Yes, I am learning it.
10 Depuis quand l'apprenez-vous?	How long have you learnt it?
11 Je l'apprends depuis six mois.	I have learnt it for half a year (these six months).

7.

12 Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day is to-day?
13 Aujourd'hui c'est lundi.	To-day is Monday.
14 Quel jour sera-ce demain?	What day will it be to-morrow?
15 Demain ce sera mardi.	To-morrow will be Tuesday.
16 Quels sont les autres jours de la semaine?	Which are the other days of the week?
17 Ce sont: mercredi, jeudi, vendredi, samedi et dimanche.	Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday.
18 Quand votre cousin est-il arrivé?	When did your cousin arrive?
19 Il est arrivé vendredi dernier.	He arrived last Friday.
20 Quand partira-t-il?	When will he go away?
21 Il partira mardi prochain.	He will set of next Tuesday.
22 Pourquoi ne reste-t-il pas jusqu'à mercredi ou jeudi?	Why does he not stay till Wednesday or Thursday?
23 Il ne peut pas rester plus longtemps; il a des affaires.	He cannot stay any longer; he has some business.
24 Quel quantième avons-nous (sommes-nous) aujourd'hui?	What day of the month have we to-day?
25 Aujourd'hui nous avons le *seize*. / 26 Aujourd'hui c'est le seize.	To-day it is the sixteenth.
27 N'était-ce pas hier le *quatorze?*	Was it not the fourteenth yesterday?
28 Pardon, (monsieur), c'était hier le quinze.	I beg your pardon, it was the fifteenth.

8.

29 Comment avez-vous dormi cette nuit?	How did you sleep last night?
30 Je vous remercie, j'ai très bien dormi.	Thank you, I slept very well.

1 Combien de temps avez-vous dormi?	How long did you sleep?
2 J'ai dormi sept heures.	I slept seven hours.
3 Trouvez-vous que ce soit longtemps?	Do you think it long?
4 Non, je ne trouve pas; moi, je dors ordinairement huit heures.	No, I do not think it too long; I usually sleep eight hours.
5 Votre frère dort-il encore?	Is your brother still sleeping?
6 Je crois qu'il est déjà levé.	I believe that he is already up.
7 Vraiment, il est levé?	Is he really up?
8 Je vais voir s'il est levé.	I will see directly if he is up.
9 A quelle heure vous levez-vous?	At what o'clock do you get up?
10 Je me lève en hiver à sept heures, en été à six heures.	I get up at seven o'clock in winter; and at six o'clock in summer.
11 Voulez-vous déjeuner avec moi?	Will you breakfast with me?
12 Vous êtes bien aimable; j'ai déjà déjeuné.	You are very kind; I have already breakfasted.
13 Qu'avez-vous *pris*?	What have you (drunk) or taken)?
14 J'ai pris une tasse de thé.	I have taken (drunk) a cup of tea.

9.

15 Quand les jours sont-ils le plus longs?	When are the days longest?
16 En été, au mois de juin.	In summer, in the month of June.
17 Quel est le jour le plus long de l'année?	Which is the longest day in the year?
18 Le vingt-deux juin.	The 22nd of June.
19 Comment sont les jours en hiver?	How are the days in winter?
20 En hiver les jours sont courts.	In winter they are short.
21 Et comment sont les nuits?	And how are the nights?
22 Les nuits sont très longues.	They are very long.
23 Quand aurons-nous le jour le plus court et la nuit la plus longue?	When shall we have the shortest day and the longest night?
24 Ce sera le vingt-deux ou vingt-trois décembre.	That will be on the 22nd or 23rd of December.
25 Combien de mois y a-t-il dans une année?	How many months are there in a year?
26 Une année a douze mois.	A year has twelve months.

1 Combien de jours y a-t-il dans un mois?	How many days are there in a month?
2 Quelques mois en ont trente, d'autres trente-et-un jours; février n'en a que vingt-huit.	Some months have 30, others 31 days; February has only 28.
3 Quels sont les noms des mois?	What are the names of the months?
4 Janvier, février, mars, avril, mai, juin, juillet, août, septembre, octobre, novembre, décembre.	January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.

10.

5 Qu'est-ce que l'Anglais vous a promis hier?	What did the Englishman promise you yesterday?
6 Il m'a promis de venir me voir aujourd'hui à dix heures.	He promised me to call upon me at ten o'clock to-day.
7 A-t-il tenu sa promesse?	Did he keep his promise?
8 Oui, il l'a tenue.	Yes, he did.
9 A-t-il été chez vous à dix heures?	Was he with you at ten o'clock?
10 Il est venu à dix heures précises.	He came punctually at ten o'clock.
11 Qu'a-t-il désiré?	What did he want?
12 Il m'a communiqué une lettre de Paris.	He communicated to me (*or* imparted to me) a letter from Paris.
13 Est-ce qu'elle contenait quelque chose de nouveau?	Did it contain any news?
14 Oui, elle contenait quelque chose de très important.	Yes, it contained some very important news.
15 Est-ce un secret?	Is it a secret?
16 Pas précisément. Je puis vous le dire, si vous désirez le savoir.	Not exactly. I can tell it to you, if you wish it.

11.

17 Avez-vous froid?	Do you feel cold?
18 Oui, j'ai froid. Je tremble de froid.	Yes, I feel cold. I tremble (*or* I shake) with cold.
19 D'où venez-vous donc?	Where do you come from?
20 Je viens de faire une promenade.	I have just been out for a walk.
21 N'aviez-vous pas peur de sortir par ce grand froid?	Were you not afraid to go out in this severe cold?
22 Non, je sors tous les jours, qu'il pleuve ou qu'il neige.	No, Sir, I go out every day, whether it rains or snows.

1 Mais pourquoi ne vous habillez-vous pas plus chaudement?	But why are you not more warmly clothed?
2 Je n'avais pas pensé qu'il fît si froid.	I did not think that it was so cold.
3 Ne voulez-vous pas vous approcher un peu du poêle?	Will you not come a little nearer to the stove?
4 Non, merci je crains d'avoir des engelures.	No, thank you, I am afraid of getting chilblains.
5 La neige est-elle profonde sur la route?	Does snow lie deep on the road?
6 Il y a à peine un pied de neige.	It is scarcely 30 centimetres deep.
7 Puis-je vous offrir mon manteau?	May I offer you my cloak?
8 Je vous remercie, je serai chez moi dans un instant.	Thank you, I shall be at home directly.

12.

9 Pourquoi êtes-vous si mouillé?	Why are you so wet?
10 J'ai été mouillé par la pluie.	I have been made wet by the rain.
11 Pleut-il donc?	Does it rain then?
12 Certainement, il pleut assez fort.	Certainly, it rains rather fast.
13 N'aviez-vous pas de parapluie?	Had you no umbrella?
14 Non, je n'en avais point avec moi.	Non, I had none with me.
15 Pourquoi n'en avez-vous pas pris, lorsque vous sortîtes *de chez vous*?	Why did you not take one with you, when you left home?
16 Lorsque je sortis *de chez moi*, il ne pleuvait du tout.	When I left home, it did not rain at all.
17 Au mois d'avril, il ne faut jamais sortir *sans prendre* un parapluie.	In April one should not go out without an umbrella.
18 Êtes-vous bien mouillé?	Are you very wet?
19 Je suis trempé.	I am wet through and through (*or* throughout).
20 Puis-je vous offrir mon parapluie?	May I offer you my umbrella?
21 Je l'accepterai avec reconnaissance.	I will accept it with thanks.
22 Voyez-vous l'arc-en-ciel?	Do you see the rain-bow?
23 Ah oui, qu'il est beau!	Ah! yes, how beautiful it is

1 Croyez-vous qu'il continuera de pleuvoir?	Do you think that it will rain much longer?
2 Je ne crois pas —, et comme je vois, la pluie a déjà cessé.	I think not, and I see that the rain has ceased (already).
3 Où sont les enfants?	Where are the children?
4 Ils sont dans la cour.	They are in the yard.
5 Où sont les écoliers?	Where are the pupils?
6 Ils sont à l'école.	They are at school.
7 Est-ce que Louise a été à la promenade?	Has Louisa been out for a walk?
8 Oui, elle a été se promener.	Yes, she has been a walking (or she has taken a walk).
9 Qui l'a accompagnée?	Who was with her?
10 Sa cousine était avec elle.	Her female cousin was with her.
11 N'a-t-elle pas été chez sa tante?	Has she not been at her aunt's?
12 Non, elle n'y a pas été.	No, she was not there.
13 Pourquoi n'y a-t-elle pas été?	Why was she not there?
14 Elle n'en a pas eu le temps.	She had no time.
15 A-t-elle trouvé des fleurs?	Did she find any flowers?
16 Elle a trouvé beaucoup de violettes.	She has found many violets.
17 N'a-t-elle pas trouvé de rose?	Has she not had a rose?
18 Oui, elle avais aussi une rose.	Yes, she had a rose too.
19 Qui lui a donné cette rose?	Who gave her this rose?
20 C'est son cousin qui *la lui* a donnée.	Her cousin gave it her.

13.

21 L'étranger est-il arrivé?	Has the stranger arrived?
22 Oui, il est arrivé hier (au) [soir.	Yes, he arrived last night.
23 Est-il arrivé seul?	Did he arrive alone?
24 Non, il a plusieurs domestiques avec lui.	No, he has several servants with him.
25 Combien de domestiques a-t-il avec lui?	How many servants has he with him?
26 Il *en* a deux ou trois.	He has two or three.
27 Est-ce que le prince est parti?	Has the prince gone away?
28 Il n'est pas encore parti.	He has not yet set off.
29 Quand partira-t-il?	When will he go away *or* leave?
30 Il partira demain.	He will go away to-morrow.
31 A quelle heure partira-t-il?	At what o'clock will he set out?
32 Il partira à huit heures.	He will leave at 8 o'clock.
33 Où va-t-il?	Where is he going?
34 Il va à la campagne.	He is going into the country.

1 A-t-il un château à la campagne?	Has he a castle in the country?
2 Il y possède un très beau château.	He has a very beautiful castle there.
3 Qui habite ce château-là?	Who lives in that castle?
4 La princesse y passe l'été.	The princess lives there in summer.
5 Où demeure-t-elle en hiver?	Where does she live in winter?
6 En hiver elle habite la ville.	In winter she lives in town.

14.

7 Le soleil est-il grand?	Is the sun large?
8 Il est très grand; *il* est bien plus grand que la terre.	He is very large; he is much larger than the earth.
9 La lune est-elle aussi plus grande que la terre?	Is the moon also larger than the earth?
10 Au contraire, la terre est plus grande que la lune.	On the contrary, the earth is larger than the moon.
11 Es-tu plus petit que ton frère Adolphe?	Are you smaller than your brother Adolphus?
12 Au contraire, mon frère est plus petit que *moi*.	On the contrary, my brother is smaller than I.
13 Est-il plus âgé que *toi*?	Is he older than you?
14 Il est de deux ans plus âgé que moi.	He is two years older than I.
15 Quel âge avez-vous, Charles?	How old are you, Charles?
16 J'*ai* treize ans.	I am thirteen years old.
17 Quel âge *a* votre frère?	How old is your brother?
18 Il *a* quinze ans.	He is fifteen years old.
19 Quand est-il né?	When was he born?
20 Il est né le *dix* janvier *mil* huit cent soixante-huit.	He was born on the tenth of January 1868.
21 Et vous, dans quelle année êtes-vous né?	And in what year were you born?
22 *Moi*, je suis né en mil huit cent soixante-dix.	I was born in the year 1870.
23 Quel jour?	On what day?
24 Le vingt-quatre avril.	On the 24th of April.

15.

25 Qui a pris mes ciseaux?	Who has taken my scissors?
26 C'est mademoiselle Élise qui les a pris.	Miss Eliza has taken them.
27 Pourquoi les a-t-elle pris?	Why has she taken them?
28 Elle n'a pas trouvé les siens.	She has not found her own.
29 Voulez-vous me prêter les vôtres?	Will you lend me yours?
30 Avec plaisir; les voici.	With pleasure; here they are.

1 Avez-vous besoin de votre dé?	Do you want your thimble?
2 Oui, j'en ai besoin.	Yes, I want it.
3 Voulez-vous coudre quelque chose?	Will you sew anything?
4 Je vais coudre des chemises.	I will sew (*or* make) some shirts.
5 Chez qui avez-vous appris à coudre?	From whom have you learnt to sew?
6 Chez une couturière.	From a seamstress.
7 Avez-vous déjà cousu des chemises?	Have you sewn (*or* made) shirts?
8 J'en ai fait déjà plusieurs douzaines.	I have already made several dozens.
9 Pour qui les avez-vous faites?	For whom did you make them?
10 J'en ai fait une douzaine pour mon frère et les autres pour moi-même.	I made a dozen for my brother, and another dozen for myself.
11 Étaient-elles faites de toile ou de calicot?	Were they made of linen or calico?
12 La première douzaine était faite de toile de Hollande, les autres de calicot.	The first dozen were of Dutch linen and the others of calico.
13 De quelle étoffe seront celles que vous allez coudre maintenant?	Of what stuff will those be, which you are now going to make?
14 Celles-ci seront de toile de Silésie.	They will be of Silesian linen.

16.

15 Avez-vous beaucoup à faire?	Have you much to do?
16 Oui, nous avons beaucoup à faire.	Yes, we have a great deal to do.
17 Avez-vous toujours tant de tâches à faire?	Have you always so many exercises to do?
18 Pas toujours.	Not always.
19 Avez-vous une version française à faire?	Have you a French translation to do?
20 Nous avons tous les jours une version à faire.	We have to do a translation every day.
21 Avez-vous aussi des mots à apprendre?	Have you also any words to learn?
22 Certainement, on ne peut pas comprendre une langne sans apprendre des mots.	Certainly, we can understand no language without learning words.
23 Combien de mots avez-vous à apprendre chaque jour?	How many words have you to learn every day?
24 C'est selon. Quelquefois quinze à vingt, quelquefois davantage.	It depends on circumstances. Sometimes 15 to 20, sometimes also more.

1 Avez-vous quelque chose à faire?	Have you anything to do?
2 J'ai toujours quelque chose à travailler.	I always have something to do.
3 Qu'avez-vous à faire à présent?	What have you to do now?
4 J'ai un thème à faire.	I have an exercise to write.
5 Qu'est-ce que votre frère a à faire?	What has your brother to do?
6 Il a une lettre à copier.	He has a letter to copy.
7 Pour qui a-t-il une lettre à copier?	For whom has he a letter to copy?
8 Pour mon père.	For my father.
9 A-t-il encore autre chose à écrire?	Has he any other things to write besides?
10 Non, il n'a pas autre chose à faire.	No, he has nothing else to do.
11 Ne va-t-il pas à l'école?	Does he not go to school?
12 Non, il ne va plus à l'école.	No, he does not go to school any more.
13 Pourqoui ne va-t-il plus à l'école?	Why does he not go to school any longer?
14 Il est maintenant dans un comptoir.	He is now in a counting-house (*or* office).
15 Qu'y fait-il?	What is he doing there?
16 Il est apprenti en commerce.	He is a tradesman's apprentice.
17 Combien de temps son apprentissage durera-t-il?	How long will his apprenticeship last?
18 Il durera trois années.	It will last three years.
19 Trouvez-vous cela long?	Do you think that long?
20 Je ne le trouve pas trop long.	I do not think it too long.

17.

21 Voulez-vous faire une promenade avec moi à présent?	Will you take a walk with me now?
22 Je suis bien fâché, mais je n'en ai pas le temps à présent.	I am sorry, I have no time now.
23 Voulez-vous faire une promenade avec moi après dîner?	Will you take a walk with me after dinner?
24 Avec plaisir; je viendrai vous prendre.	Willingly, I shall come for you.
25 A quelle heure viendrez-vous?	At what o'clock will you come?
26 Je viendrai un peu après six heures.	I shall come a little after six.
27 Aimez-vous la promenade?	Do you like to walk (out)?

1 Je fais une promenade tous les jours.	I take a walk every day.
2 Avec qui vous êtes-vous promené hier?	With whom did you take a walk yesterday?
3 Je me suis promené avec mon neveu.	I took a walk with my nephew.
4 Votre neveu n'est-il pas encore parti?	Has your nephew not yet left?
5 Non, il est encore ici.	No, he is still here.
6 Quand partira-t-il?	When will he set out?
7 Le jour de son départ n'est pas encore fixé.	The day of his departure is not yet fixed.
8 Fera-t-il un long voyage?	Will he make a long journey?
9 Il voyagera en France, et il ne sera pas de retour avant deux mois.	He will travel in France, and will not be back again for two months.

18.

10 Ne savez-vous pas où est mon chapeau.	Do you not know where my hat is?
11 Non, je ne (le) sais pas.	No, I do not.
12 Le domestique sait-il où il est?	Does the servant know where it is?
13 Il ne le sait pas non plus.	He does not know either.
14 Lui avez-vous déjà demandé?	Have you asked him already?
15 Oui, je lui ai déjà demandé.	Yes, I have already asked him.
16 Peut-être que la servante le sait?	Perhaps the maid-servant knows?
17 Il est possible qu'elle le sache, parce qu'elle a nettoyé votre chambre.	It is possible that she does, because she has cleaned your room.
18 Appelez-la, je vous prie.	Call her, please.
19 Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service, monsieur?	What is your pleasure, Sir?
20 Où avez-vous mis mon chapeau?	Where have you laid my hat?
21 Je l'ai mis dans l'armoire.	I have put it in the wardrobe.
22 Dans quelle armoire?	In which?
23 Dans cette armoire-ci.	In this wardrobe.
24 Est-ce qu'il n'y est plus?	Is it no longer there?
25 Je n'y ai pas encore regardé.	I have not yet looked there.
26 Où est la clef? L'avez-vous ôtée (retirée)?	Where is the key? Have you taken it away?
27 Je l'ai retirée, comme j'ai coutume de le faire.	I have taken it out, as I usually (*or* use to) do.
28 Où l'avez-vous mise?	Where have you put it?
29 Je l'ai pendue au clou.	I have hung it up on the nail.

1 Mais elle n'y est plus.	It is not hanging there.
2 Dans ce cas elle sera tombée par terre.	Then it must have fallen down.
3 La voilà.	There it lies.
4 Ramassez-la, je vous prie.	Pick it up, if you please.

19.

5 Qui a bâti cette maison?	Who has built this house?
6 Un certain monsieur Müller.	A certain Mr. Müller.
7 Est-ce qu'il l'habite lui-même?	Does he inhabit it himself?
8 Non, il n'y habite pas lui-même.	No, he does not live in it himself.
9 Où demeure-t-il donc?	Where does he live then?
10 Il demeure dans une autre rue.	He lives in another street.
11 A-t-il encore d'autres maisons?	Has he any other houses?
12 Oui, il en a trois autres.	Yes, he has three others.
13 Est-il riche?	Is he rich?
14 On le dit, mais je ne le crois pas.	They say so; but I do not believe it.
15 Pourquoi ne le croyez-vous pas?	Why do you not believe it?
16 Parce que je sais qu'il a aussi des dettes.	Because I know that he is deeply in debt too.
17 D'où savez-vous cela?	How do you know that?
18 Un de mes amis me l'a dit.	A friend of mine has told me so.
19 Comment votre ami peut-il le savoir?	How can your friend know it?
20 Il faut bien qu'il le sache, puisqu'il est un de ses créanciers.	He must know it well, since he is one of his creditors.
21 Sa femme vit-elle encore?	Is his wife still living?
22 Non, elle est morte.	No, she is dead.
23 Y a-t-il longtemps qu'elle est morte?	Is it long since she died?
24 Elle est morte il y a trois ans.	It is three years since she died.
25 A quel âge?	What was her age?
26 A l'âge de trente-sept ans.	She was thirty seven years of age.

20.

27 Savez-vous que mon voisin est mort?	Did you hear that my neighbour has died?
28 Non, je ne l'ai pas entendu dire; quand est-il mort?	No, Sir, I have not heard of it; when did he die?
29 Il est mort cette nuit.	He died last night.

1 De quelle maladie est-il mort?	Of what illness did he die?
2 Il est mort d'une fièvre typhoïde.	He died of the typhus fever.
3 Combien de temps a-t-il été malade?	How long was he ill?
4 Il a été malade pendant six semaines.	He was ill for six weeks.
5 Êtes-vous *allé* le *voir* quelquefois?	Did you sometimes go to see him?
6 Je suis allé le voir presque tous les jours.	I called on him almost every day.
7 Était-il de vos amis?	Was he your friend?
8 Oui, c'était mon meilleur ami.	Yes, he was my best friend.
9 Où avez-vous fait sa connaissance?	Where did you make his acquaintance?
10 J'ai fait sa connaissance à Hambourg.	I made his acquaintance at Hamburgh.
11 Avez-vous beaucoup de connaissances à Hambourg?	Have you many acquaintances at Hamburgh?
12 J'en ai bien peu; la plupart sont mortes.	I have very few; most are dead.
13 Avez-vous été longtemps à Hambourg?	Were you long at Hamburg?
14 J'y suis resté dix-huit mois.	I lived there one year and a half (eighteen months).

21.

15 Viendrez-vous chez moi demain?	Will you come to me (*or* to see me) to-morrow?
16 Viendrez-vous me voir demain?	
17 Oui, si j'ai le temps.	Yes, if I have time.
18 Votre belle-sœur viendra-t-elle aussi?	Will your sister-in-law come too?
19 Je ne crois pas qu'elle y aille; mais mon beau-frère ira vous trouver.	I believe that she will not come; but my brother-in-law will come with me.
20 Seriez-vous venu me voir, si vous aviez su que j'étais malade?	Would you have visited me, if you had known that I was ill?
21 Certainement, je serais allé vous voir, si j'avais su que vous fussiez malade.	Certainly, I would have visited you, if I had known that you were ill.
22 Auriez-vous acheté ce cheval, si vous aviez su qu'il était à vendre?	Would you have bought this horse, if you had known that it was to be sold?
23 Non, je ne l'aurais pas acheté; il ne me plaît pas.	No, I should not have bought it; it does not please me.

1 Parleriez-vous toujours français, si vous saviez cette langue?	Would you always speak French, if you knew it?
2 Je ne parlérais pas toujours, mais je parlerais quelquefois.	I should not always speak it, but sometimes.
3 Ne parlez-vous pas français?	Do you not speak French?
4 Non, monsieur, mais je parle anglais et italien.	No, Sir, but I speak English and Italian.

22.

5 Avez-vous encore besoin de ma clef de montre?	Do you still want my watch-key?
6 Non, je n'en ai plus besoin.	No, I do not want it any longer.
7 Avez-vous perdu la vôtre?	Have you lost yours?
8 Je ne puis la trouver.	I cannot find it.
9 Ce garçon a-t-il besoin de souliers neufs?	Does this boy want new shoes?
10 Il lui faut une paire de bottes neuves.	He wants a new pair of boots.
11 Les siennes sont-elles déchirées?	Are his torn (*or* worn out)?
12 Oui, elles sont toutes trouées.	Yes, they are quite full of holes.
13 Depuis combien de temps les porte-t-il?	How long *has he worn* them?
14 Il y a deux mois qu'il les porte.	He has worn them two months.
15 N'a-t-il pas aussi besoin d'habits neufs?	Does he not also want new clothes?
16 Oui, il lui faut une redingote et un pantalon.	Yes, he wants a new coat and a pair of trowsers.
17 Est-ce que son gilet est encore en bon état?	Is his waistcoat still good?
18 Il est encore assez bon.	It is still pretty good.
19 Combien de paires de bas vous faut-il?	How many pairs of stockings do you want?
20 Il m'en faut six paires.	I want six pairs.
21 Voulez-vous les acheter vous-même, ou faut-il que je les achète pour vous?	Will you buy them yourself, or shall I buy them for you?
22 Je vous serais bien obligé, si vous vouliez avoir la bonté de les acheter pour moi.	I should be much obliged to you, if you would be so kind as to buy them 1

23.

1 A quoi pensez-vous?	What are you thinking of?
2 Je pense à mon avenir.	I am thinking of my future.
3 Qu'est-ce qui vous fait penser à votre avenir?	What makes you think of your future?
4 Il faut que je choisisse un état.	I must now choose a profession.
5 Qui vous demande cela?	Who desires you to do so?
6 Mon père le demande.	My father does.
7 Vous laisse-t-il le choix libre?	Does he leave you a free choice?
8 Il m'a dit: „Mon fils, choisissez un état (une profession) vous-même; je ne vous prescrirai rien."	He has said to me: „My son, choose yourself a profession, I will prescribe nothing to you."
9 Êtes-vous maintenant décidé?	Are you now decided?
10 Non, je ne me suis pas encore décidé.	No, I have not yet decided.
11 Oh, que je vous plains!	Oh! how I pity you!
12 Pourquoi me plaignez-vous donc?	Why do you pity me?
13 Parce que rien ne rend l'homme si malheureux que l'indécision.	Because nothing makes a man so unhappy as indecision.
14 Vous vous trompez, monsieur, je ne suis pas indécis; mais je ne veux pas précipiter ma décision.	You are mistaken, Sir. I am not undecided, but I will not hurry my decision.
15 A la bonne heure!	Very good! (That is a different thing.)
16 Si vous me demandiez mon avis, je vous conseillerais de vous faire négociant; car c'est au commerce que le monde appartient.	If you ask my advice, I should advise you to be a merchant; for the whole world is open to commerce (*or* trade).
17 Je vous remercie de votre avis.	I thank you for your advice.

24.

18 Quel conseil avez-vous donné à votre ami?	What advice have you given to your friend?
19 Je lui ai conseillé d'aller en Amérique.	I have advised him to go to America.
20 Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas donné un meilleur conseil?	Why have you not given him better advice?
21 Je crois que c'était le meilleur que j'eusse pu lui donner.	I think it was the best I could give him
22 Suivra-t-il votre conseil?	Will he advice?

1 Il m'a dit qu'il le suivrait.	He told me that he would follow it.
2 Combien de temps met-on pour aller en Amérique?	How long does one require to go to America?
3 Dans un bateau à vapeur on met 12 à 14 jours, et dans un vaisseau à voile on met 4 ou 5 semaines.	In a steamboat from 10 to 14 days are required, in a sailing-vessel from 4 to 5 weeks.
4 Le voyage par mer est-il agréable?	Is the voyage pleasant?
5 Très agréable, quand le temps est favorable.	Very pleasant, if the weather is favourable.
6 Avez-vous déjà fait un voyage en Amérique?	Have you already made a voyage to America?
7 Oui, j'ai été à New-York l'année dernière.	Yes, last year I went to New York.
8 Combien de temps y êtes-vous resté?	How long were you there?
9 Je n'y suis resté que deux mois.	I only stayed there two months.

VOCABULARY.

1. French-English Part.

à *to.*
abandonner *to forsake.*
abeille f. *bee.*
à la maison *at home.*
acheter *to buy.*
admirer *to admire.*
âge m. *age.*
âgé, -e *old.*
aimer *to love, to like.*
aïeul m. *great-grandfather.*
âme f. *soul.*
amer, -ère *bitter.*
ami m. *friend.*
amie f. *(female) friend.*
amitié f. *friendship.*
ancien, -ne *ancient.*
âne m. *ass.*
animal m. *animal, beast.*
annoncer *to announce.*
appartement m. *apartment.*
appartenir *to belong.*
appliqué *diligent.*
apporter *to bring.*
arbre m. *tree.*
argent m. *money, silver.*
armée f. *army.*
assiette f. *plate.*
attendre *to wait for, expect.*
aujourd'hui *to-day.*
autrefois *formerly.*
avant *before (time!)*
avec *with.*
avis m. *advice.*
avoir raison *to be right.*
avoir tort *to be wrong.*

Bague f. *ring.*
bal m. *ball.*
bas m. *stocking.*
bataille f. *battle.*
bâtir *to build.*
beau, bel, belle *beautiful*
bétail m. *cattle.*
beurre m. *butter.*
bien *well.*
bière f. *beer.*
bijou m. *jewel.*
blâmer *to blame.*
blé m. *corn.*
blesser *to wound.*
bleu *blue.*
bois m. *wood.*
bon *good.*
bord m. *bank.*
botte f. *boot.*
bourse f. *purse.*
bouteille f. *bottle.*
bras m. *arm.*
bruit m. *noise, report.*
bu *drunk.*

Cacher *to hide.*
cadeau m. *present.*
café m. *coffee.*
cahier m. *copy-book.*
caillou m. *pebble.*
canif m. *penknife.*
capitale f. *capital.*
ce, cette *this.*
cette nuit *last night.*
cerise f. *cherry.*
chagrin m. *grief.*
chambre f. *room.*
champ m. *field.*
chandelle f. *candle.*
chanson f. *song.*
chanter *to sing.*

chapeau m. *hat, bonnet.*
chat m. *cat.* 50·17
château m. *castle.*
chaud, -e *warm.* 54·3 -50·18
cheval m. *horse.*
chez *at the house of.*
chien m. *dog.*
classe f. *class.* 52·3-52·19
clef f. *key.*
clou m. *nail.* p.53.11
choisir *to choose.* 66·3
chou m. *cabbage.* 53·8
ciel m. *heaven.* 57·2
cinq *five.*
circonstance f. *circumstance.*
colline f. *hill.*
commencer *to begin.* 63·14
conduite f. *conduct.*
congé m. *holiday.* 44·17
(il) connaît *(he) knows.*
content *contented.* 52.23
convention f. *agreement.* 107.22
couleur f. *colour.* 76·9
courrier m. *messenger.*
court, -e *short.*
cousin m. *cousin.*
cousine f. *cousin.*
couteau m. *knife.* p.55.37-101.15
coûter *to cost.* 60·2,37
crayon m. *pencil.*
cupidité f. *cupidity.*
cuiller f. *spoon.*

De *of.*
danger m. *danger.* 112.9
défendre *to forbid, defend.* 68·6
déjà *already.*
demain *to-morrow.*
demeurer *to live, dwell.*
démolir *to demolish.* 87.3
désirer *to desire.* 60·18,61
descendre *to come down.* 68·8
dette f. *debt.* p.94.12
deux *two.*
devoir m. *duty.* p.66·6
Dieu *God.*
différence f. *difference.*
difficile *difficult.* 84·8
dîner m. *dinner.* 53·34
donné *given.*
douzaine f. *dozen.*
drap m. *cloth.* 50·30

Eau f. *water.*
école f. *school.*
écolier m. *pupil.*
effrayer *to frighten.* 63·43
église f. *church.* p.51·3-41·10
élève m. *pupil.*
employer *to employ.* 63·17
encre f. *ink.* 76·21
encrier m. *inkstand.* p.52·38
enfant m. *child.*
ennemi m. *enemy.* 68·9-88·4
entre *between.*
entendre *to hear.* 68·1
envie f. *envy.*
envoyer *to send.* 74·37-112·26
espérer *to hope.* 63·10
essuyer *to wipe.* 63·19
et *and.*
été m. *summer.* 48·30
été *been.*
étude f. *study.* p.101·5
excellent *excellent.*

Fable f. *fable.* p.37·61
fâché *angry.*
facile *easy.* 52·37·45·12-50·23-84·8
faiblesse f. *weakness.*
fait *makes, made.*
famille f. *family.* 82·49
farine f. *flour.*
faute f. *mistake, fault.* 45·1·8
femme f. *lady, wife, woman.* p.69·4
fenêtre f. *window.*
feu m. *fire.*
fidèle *faithful.*
fille f. *daughter, girl.*
fils m. *son.* p.41·16
fleur f. *flower.* p.38·8
(ils) font *(they) make.*
forêt f. *forest.*
fort, -e *strong.* 52.21-52.22
fortune f. *fortune.* 53·33
frapper *to strike.* 76·15
frère m. *brother.* p.38·4-p.44·18
froid, -e *cold.* 45·11-50·19
fromage m. *cheese.*
fruit m. *fruit.* 50·29-50·5-52·20
fusil m. *gun.* 68·10

Gant m. *glove.*
garçon m. *boy.*
genou m. *knee.*
gloire f. *glory.*
grand *large, great, tall.* 50·16
grimper *to climb.*

Habit (l') m. *coat.* 53·32-5[illegible]
habitant (l') m. *inhabitant*

38.12 heureux, -se *happy.* 52.15 - 87.20 p.23
hibou (le) *owl.* 53.18
hier *yesterday.*
103.11 histoire (l') f. *history.* 48.45
hiver (l') m. *winter.*
homme (l') m. *man.*
huile (l') f. *oil.* 53.45

Ici *here.*
île f. *island.*
il y a *there is, there are.*
inviter *to invite.* 5[illegible] - 99.15

Jardin m. *garden.*
jeu m. *play, game.*
jeune *young.* p.37.9 - 52.45
joujou m. *plaything.* 53.10
jour m. *day.*
juger *to judge.*

Langue f. *language.* 50.23
leçon f. *lesson.* 71.25 - 96.11 - 105.19
lever *to lift up.*
lever m. du soleil *sun-rise.*
liberté f. *liberty.* 78.17
libraire m. *bookseller.*
lieu m. *place.*
lion m. *lion.* p.51.7 - p.57.7
lit m. *bed.* 51.12 - 51.12
livre f. *pound.*
livre m. *book.*
loin *far.*
lorsque *when.*
lu *read.*
lune f. *moon.*

Main f. *hand.*
mais *but.*
maison f. *house.*
maître m. *master.*
malade *ill.* 52.8
malheureux, -se *unhappy.*
maltraiter *to ill-treat.* 89.4, 15
mangé *eaten.*
manger *to eat.*
manière f. *manner.*
marchand m. *merchant.* 43.10
marié, -e *married.*
matin m. *morning.* 37.13
mener *to lead.*
méprise f. *mistake.*
mère f. *mother.*
minute f. minute.
misérable *miserable.*
mois m. *month.* 4.2
monde m. *world.* 52.5 - 101.6
montagne f. *mountain.* p.52.23
monter *to climb.*
montre f. *watch.*
morceau m. *piece.* 54.13
mort, -e *dead.*
mort f. *death.*
mortel *mortal.*
moutarde f. *mustard.*

Nation f. *nation.*
nature f. *nature.*
né *born.*
neige f. *snow.*
nez m. *nose.*
ni — ni *neither — nor.*
noix f. *walnut.* p.53.20
nom m. *name.*
non *no.*
nuit f. *night.* p.52.16

Obéissant *obedient.* 78.18
occasion f. *opportunity.*
œil m. *eye.*
oiseau m. *bird.* 53.39 - p.55.57
on *one, they, people.*
oncle m. *uncle.*
or m. *gold.*
orange f. *orange.* 48.82
ordre m. *command.*
où? *where?*
oublié *forgotten.*
oublier *to forget.* 53.36
oui *yes.*
ouvrier m. *workman.*

Pain m. *bread.* 74.24
paire f. *pair.* 96. p.53.13
palais m. *castle.*
papier m. *paper.*
parce que *because.*
paresseux, -se *idle.*
parler *to speak.* 60.6
partager *to share, divide.*
pas encore *not yet.*
pauvre *poor.* 52.23
payer *to pay.* 63.44 - 99.12
pays m. *country.*
paysan m. *peasant.*
penser à *to think of.* 63.2 - 71.6
perdre *to lose.* 52.40 - 53.33 - 59.25.61
perdu *lost.*
père m. *father.*
petit, -e *small.* 50.17
pierre f. *stone.* p.63.4
placer *to place.* 63.16

plaisir m. *pleasure.* 54·3
pleurer *to cry.* 60·8
plume f. *pen, feather.* p.53·5
plus de *more than.*
plusieurs *several.* 62·7
poche f. *pocket.*
poire f. *pear.*
poisson m. *fish.* 105·18
poivre m. *pepper.* 53·3
poli, -e *polite.*
pomme f. *apple.* 91·10
pont m. *bridge.*
porte f. *door, gate.*
porter *to carry, take, wear.* 60·10
posséder *to possess.* 76·4
pou m. *louse.*
pour *for.*
pourquoi? *why?*
pousser *to push.*
prairie f. *meadow.*
préférer *to prefer.* 68·9
prendre de la peine *to take pains.*
presque *almost.* 63·26
prêt, -e *ready.*
prêter *to lend.* 74·
prier *to pray.*
prince m. *prince.*
punir *to punish.* 66·2-8·3

Quand? *when?*
quatre *four.*
qui? *who?*

Rebâtir *to rebuild.*
reçu *received.*
regarder *to look at.* 63·7-84·34
reine f. *queen.*
remplir *to fulfil.* 66·6
rencontrer *to meet.*
répondre *to answer.* 68·7
rester *to stay, remain.*
réussir *to succeed.*
riche *rich.* p.52·23-p.37·23-82·23
rivière f. *river.*
robe f. *dress.* 50·22
roi m. *king.*
rose f. *rose.*
rue f. *street.* 60·49

Salir *to soil, dirty.* 66·4-82·3
salon m. *drawing-room.* 99·15
sans *without.* 45·1-119·12
sel m. *salt.* 53·37
semaine f. *week.* 91·8
si *so, if.*
siècle m. *century.* 45·13
sœur f. *sister.* p.39·19-p.48·25
soir m. *evening.* 39·1
soldat m. *soldier.* 50·31-61·13-p.55·24, 4
soleil m. *sun.*
sottise f. *folly.*
soulier m. *shoe.* p.69·2
souvent *often.* 60·8
spectacle m. *theatre.*
sucre m. *sugar.*
sur *on, upon.*

Table f. *table.* 54·8
tailleur m. *tailor.* 69·1
tante f. *aunt.*
tasse f. *cup.*
temps m. *time, weather.* 48·21
terre f. *earth.*
thé m. *tea.*
théâtre m. *theatre.*
thème m. *exercise.*
titre m. *title.*
toujours *always.*
tout le monde *everybody.*
travail m. *work.* 66·21
travailler *to work.* 63·6
très *very.*
trois *three.*
trou m. *hole.* 58·17
trouvé *found.*
trouver *to find.* 60·14, 29
tuer *to kill.*

Utile *useful.* 52·18-53·12

Vache f. *cow.* p.103·14
vaisseau m. *vessel, ship.* p.50·7
velours m. *velvet.*
vendu *sold.*
verre m. *glass.*
version f. *translation.*
viande f. *meat.*
vie f. *life.* 53·3
ville f. *town.*
vin m. *wine.*
vinaigre m. *vinegar.*
visite f. *visit.* 76·8
vivant *living.*
vœu m. *wish.* p.53·14
voici *here is, here are.*
voisin m. *neighbour.*
voiture f. *carriage.* 82·34
votre *your.*
voyager *to travel.*
voyageur m. *traveller.*
vu *seen.*

2. English-French Part.

Admire *admirer.*
advice *avis, conseil* m.
agreement *convention* f.
almost *presque.*
already *déjà.*
also *aussi.*
always *toujours.*
animal *animal* m.
apartment *appartement* m.
apple *pomme* f.
arm *bras* m.
army *armée* f.
arrive *arriver.*
at home *à la maison.*
at the house of *chez.*
aunt *tante* f.

Ball *bal* m.
battle *bataille* f.
beautiful *beau, belle.*
bed *lit* m.
beer *bière* f.
before *avant (time), devant (lieu).*
bird *oiseau* m.
bitter *amer, amère.*
bonnet *chapeau* m.
book *livre* m.
boot *botte* f.
born *né, -e.*
bottle *bouteille* f.
boy *garçon* m.
bread *pain* m.
bring *apporter.*
brother *frère* m.
build *bâtir.*
butter *beurre* m.
buy *acheter.*

Candle *chandelle* f.
capital *capitale* f.
carriage *voiture* f.
carry *porter.*
castle *palais* m.
cat *chat* m.
cheese *fromage* m.
cherry *cerise.*
child *enfant* m.
church *église* f.
class *classe* f.
cloth *drap* m.
coat *habit (l')* m.
coffee *café* m.
colour *couleur* f.
commence *commencer.*
conduct *conduite* f.
contented *content, -e.*
corn *blé* m.
cost *coûter.*
cow *vache* f.
country *pays* m.
cry *crier.*

Dance *danser.*
danger *danger* m.
daughter *fille* f.
debt *dette* f.
desire *désirer.*
difficult *difficile.*
diligent *appliqué, -e.*
dinner *dîner* m.
discontented *mécontent, -e.*
dog *chien* m.
drawing-room *salon* m.
(I) drink *je bois.*
duty *devoir* m.

Easy *facile.*
eaten *mangé.*
employ *employer.*
enough *assez.*
envy *envie* f.
esteem *estimer.*
exercise *thème.*

Fable *fable* f.
faithful *fidèle.*
family *famille.*
father *père* m.
fault *faute* f.
find *trouver.*
five *cinq.*
fish *poisson* m.
flower *fleur* f.
folly *sottise* f.
for *pour.*
forest *forêt* f.
forgotten *oublié.*
formerly *autrefois.*
fortune *fortune* f., *bien* m.
four *quatre.*
fresh *frais, fraîche.*
friend *ami* m., *amie* f.
frighten *effrayer.*
fruit *fruit* m.
fulfil *remplir.*

Garden *jardin* m.
given *donné.*

glass *verre* m.
glove *gant* m.
God *Dieu.*
gold *or* m.
good *bon, -ne.*
grief *chagrin* m.
gun *fusil* m.

Happy *heureux, -se.*
hat *chapeau* m.
here *ici.*
hide *cacher.*
high *haut, -e; élevé, -e.*
his *ses.*
holiday *congé* m.
hope *espérer.*
horse *cheval* m.
house *maison* f.

Idle *paresseux, -se.*
if *si.*
ill *malade.*
ill-treat *maltraiter.*
inhabitant *habitant* m.
ink *encre* f.
inkstand *encrier* m.
invite *inviter.*

Kill *tuer.*
king *roi* m.

Last night *cette nuit.*
lend *prêter.*
lesson *leçon* f.
letter *lettre* f.
liberty *liberté* f.
life *vie* f.
lift up *lever.*
like *aimer.*
lion *lion* m.
live *demeurer.*
long live! *vive!*
look for *chercher.*
lost *perdu.*
love *aimer.*

Man *homme (l')* m.
many *beaucoup.*
merchant *marchand* m.
minute *minute* f.
mistake *faute* f.
money *argent* m.
month *mois* m.
morning *matin* m.
mother *mère* f.
mountain *montagne* f.
mustard *moutarde* f.

Name *nom* m.
nation *nation* f.
neighbour *voisin* m.
neither — nor *ni — ni.*
night *nuit* f.
no *non.*
noise *bruit* m.

Obedient *obéissant.*
oil *huile (l')* f.
on *sur.*
or *ou.*
orange *orange* f.

Pair *paire* f.
paper *papier* m.
part *partie* f.
pay *payer.*
pear *poire* f.
pebble *caillou* m.
pen *plume* f.
pencil *crayon* m.
penknife *canif* m.
pepper *poivre* m.
picture *tableau* m.
place *placer.*
plate *assiette* f.
plaything *joujou* m.
pleasure *plaisir* m.
poor *pauvre.*
possess *posséder.*
potato *pomme* f. *de terre.*
pound *livre* f.
praise *louer.*
pray *prier.*
prefer *préférer.*
present *cadeau* m.
pupil *élève* m.
purse *bourse* f.

Queen *reine* f.

Ready *prêt, -e.*
rebuild *rebâtir.*
received *reçu.*
report *bruit* m.
rich *riche.*
ring *bague* f.
room *chambre* f.
rose *rose* f.

Salt *sel* m.
school *école* f.
see (we) *nous voyons.*
seen *vu.*
shoe *soulier* m.
short *court, -e.*

silk *soie* f.
silver *argent* m.
sky *ciel* m.
small *petit, -e.*
sold *vendu.*
soldier *soldat* m.
son *fils* m.
soon *bientôt.*
speak *parler.*
stay *rester, demeurer.*
stocking *bas* m.
stone *pierre* f.
street *rue* f.
study *étude* f.
sugar *sucre* m.
summer *été* m.

Table *table* f.
tailor *tailleur* m.
taken *pris.*
tall *grand, -e.*
tea *thé* m.
that *que.*
theatre *théâtre* m.
think *penser.*
three *trois.*
throne *trône* m.
throw *jeter.* 63.4
time *temps* m.
to-day *aujourd'hui.*
to-morrow *demain.*
to whom belongs? *à qui est?*

town *ville* f.
translation *version* f.
tree *arbre* m.
two *deux.*

Uncle *oncle* m.
(I) used to live *je demeurais.*
useful *utile.*

Very *très.*
vessel *vaisseau* m., *navire* m.
visit *visite* f.

Walnut *noix* f.
water *eau* f.
watch *montre* f.
weather *temps* m.
week *semaine* f.
when *lorsque.*
where? *où?*
white *blanc, blanche.*
window *fenêtre* f.
wine *vin* m.
winter *hiver (l')* m.
work *travail* m.
work *œuvre* f., *ouvrage* m.
world *monde* m.
wound *blessure* f.
wound *blesser.*

Yesterday *hier.*
young *jeune.*
yours *le, la vôtre, les vôtres.*

Printed by C. F. [illegible]ter, [illegible]rmstadt.

APPENDICE

ARRÊTÉ

RELATIF A LA SIMPLIFICATION DE L'ENSEIGNEMENT DE LA SYNTAXE FRANÇAISE

(26 février 1901)

Le Ministre de l'Instruction publique et des Beaux-Arts,
Vu l'article 5 de la loi du 27 février 1900;
Vu l'arrêté du 31 juillet 1900;
Le Conseil supérieur de l'Instruction publique entendu,

Arrête :

ARTICLE 1er. — Dans les examens ou concours dépendant du Ministère de l'Instruction publique, qui comportent des épreuves spéciales d'orthographe, il ne sera pas compté de fautes aux candidats pour avoir usé des tolérances indiquées dans la liste annexée au présent arrêté.

La même disposition est applicable au jugement des diverses compositions rédigées en langue française, dans les examens ou concours dépendant du Ministère de l'Instruction publique qui ne comportent pas une épreuve spéciale d'orthographe.

ART. 2. — L'arrêté du 31 juillet 1900 est rapporté.

GEORGES LEYGUES.

Liste annexée à l'arrêté du 26 février 1901.

SUBSTANTIF.

Pluriel ou singulier. — Dans toutes les constructions où le sens permet de comprendre le substantif complément aussi bien au singulier qu'au pluriel, on tolérera l'emploi de l'un ou de l'autre nombre Ex.: *des habits de femme* ou *de femmes; — des confitures de groseille* ou *de groseilles; — des prêtres en bonnet carré* ou *en bonnets carrés; — ils ont ôté leur chapeau* ou *leurs chapeaux.*

SUBSTANTIFS DES DEUX GENRES.

1. Aigle. — L'usage actuel donne à ce substantif le genre masculin, sauf dans le cas où il désigne des enseignes. Ex.: *les aigles romaines.*

2. Amour, orgue. — L'usage actuel donne à ces deux mots le genre masculin au singulier. Au pluriel, on tolérera indifféremment le genre masculin ou le genre féminin. Ex.: *les grandes orgues; — un des plus beaux orgues; — de folles amours; — des amours tardifs.*

3. Délice et délices sont, en réalité, deux mots différents. Le premier est d'un usage rare et un peu recherché. Il est inutile de s'en occuper dans l'enseignement élémentaire et dans les exercices.

4. Automne, enfant. — Ces deux mots étant des deux genres, il est inutile de s'en occuper particulièrement. Il en est de même de tous les substantifs qui sont indifféremment des deux genres.

5. Gens, orge. — On tolérera, dans toutes les constructions, l'accord de l'adjectif au féminin avec le mot *gens.* Ex.: *instruits* ou *instruites par l'expérience, les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux* ou *soupçonneuses.*

On tolérera l'emploi du mot *orge* au féminin sans exception: *orge carrée, orge mondée, orge perlée.*

6. Hymne. — Il n'y a pas de raison suffisante pour donner à ce mot deux sens différents, suivant qu'il est employé au masculin ou au féminin. On tolérera les deux genres, aussi bien pour les chants nationaux que pour les chants religieux. Ex.: *un bel hymne* ou *une belle hymne.*

7. Pâques. — On tolérera l'emploi de ce mot au féminin aussi bien pour désigner une date que la fête religieuse. Ex.: *à Pâques prochain* ou *à Pâques prochaines.*

PLURIEL DES SUBSTANTIFS.

Pluriel des noms propres. — La plus grande obscurité régnant dans les règles et les exceptions enseignées dans les grammaires, on tolérera dans tous les cas que les noms propres, précédés de l'article pluriel, prennent la marque du pluriel. Ex.: *les Corneilles* comme les *Gracques, — des Virgiles* (exemplaires) comme *des Virgiles* (éditions).

Il en sera de même pour les noms propres de personnes désignant les œuvres de ces personnes. Ex.: *des Meissoniers.*

Pluriel des noms empruntés à d'autres langues. — Lorsque ces mots sont tout à fait entrés dans la langue française, on tolérera que le pluriel soit formé suivant la règle générale. Ex.: *des exéats* comme *des déficits.*

NOMS COMPOSÉS.

Noms composés. — Les mêmes noms composés se rencontrent aujourd'hui tantôt avec le trait d'union, tantôt sans trait d'union. Il est inutile de fatiguer les enfants à apprendre des contradictions que rien ne justifie. L'absence de trait d'union dans l'expression *pomme de terre* n'empêche pas cette expression de former un véritable nom composé aussi bien que *chef-d'œuvre,* par exemple. Ces mots pourront toujours s'écrire sans trait d'union.

ARTICLE.

Article devant les noms propres de personnes. — L'usage existe d'employer l'article devant certains noms de famille italiens: *le Tasse, le Corrège,* et quelquefois à tort devant des prénoms: *(le) Dante, (le) Guide.* — On ne comptera pas comme faute l'ignorance de cet usage.

Il règne aussi une grande incertitude dans la manière d'écrire l'article qui fait partie de certains noms propres français: *la Fontaine, la Fayette* ou *Lafayette.* Il convient d'indiquer, dans les textes dictés, si, dans les noms propres qui contiennent un article, l'article doit être séparé du nom.

Article supprimé. — Lorsque deux adjectifs unis par *et* se rapportent au même substantif de manière à désigner en réalité deux choses différentes, on tolérera la suppression de l'article devant le second adjectif. Ex : *l'histoire ancienne et moderne,* comme *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne.*

Article partitif. — On tolérera *du, de la, des,* au lieu de *de* partitif, devant un substantif précédé d'un adjectif. Ex.: *de* ou *du bon pain, de bonne viande* ou *de la bonne viande, de* ou *des bons fruits.*

Article devant *plus, moins,* **etc.** — La règle qui veut qu'on emploie *le plus, le moins, le mieux,* comme un neutre invariable devant un adjectif indiquant le degré le plus élevé de la qualité possédée par le substantif, qualifié sans comparaison avec d'autres objets, est très subtile et de peu d'utilité. Il est superflu de s'en occuper dans l'enseignement élémentaire et dans les exercices. On tolérera *le plus, la plus, les plus, les moins, les mieux,* etc., dans des constructions telles que: *on a abattu les arbres le plus* ou *les plus exposés à la tempête.*

ils sont multipliés par un autre nombre. On l de *vingt* et de *cent*, même lorsque ces mots d'un autre adjectif numéral. Ex.: *quatre vingt* ou *vingts dix hommes; — quatre cent* ou *quatre cents trente ans.*

Le trait d'union ne sera pas exigé entre le mot désignant les unités et le mot désignant les dizaines. Ex.: *dix sept.*

Dans la désignation du millésime, on tolérera *mille* au lieu de *mil*, comme dans l'expression d'un nombre. Ex.: *l'an mil huit cent quatre vingt-dix* ou *l'an mille huit cents quatre vingts dix.*

ADJECTIFS DÉMONSTRATIFS, INDÉFINIS ET PRONOMS.

Ce. — On tolérera la réunion des particules *ci* et *là* avec le pronom qui les précède, sans exiger qu'on distingue *qu'est ceci, qu'est cela* de *qu'est ce ci, qu'est ce là.* — On tolérera la suppression du trait d'union dans ces constructions.

Même. — Après un substantif ou un pronom au pluriel, on tolérera l'accord de *même* au pluriel et on n'exigera pas de trait d'union entre *même* et le pronom. Ex.: *nous mêmes, les dieux mêmes.*

Tout. — Devant un nom de ville, on tolérera l'accord du mot *tout* avec le nom propre, sans chercher à établir une différence un peu subtile entre des constructions comme *toute Rome* et *tout Rome.*

On ne comptera pas de faute non plus à ceux qui écriront indifféremment, en faisant parler une femme, *je suis tout à vous* ou *je suis toute à vous.*

Lorsque *tout* est employé avec le sens indéfini de *chaque,* on tolérera indifféremment la construction au singulier ou au pluriel du mot *tout* et du substantif qu'il accompagne. Ex.: *des marchandises de toute sorte* ou *de toutes sortes; — la sottise est de tout (tous) temps et de tout (tous) pays.*

Aucun. — Avec une négation, on tolérera l'emploi de ce mot aussi bien au pluriel qu'au singulier. Ex.: *ne faire aucun projet* ou *aucuns projets.*

Chacun. — Lorsque ce pronom est construit après le verbe et se rapporte à un mot pluriel sujet ou complément, on tolérera indifférement, après *chacun,* le possessif *son, sa, ses* ou le possessif *leur, leurs.* Ex.: *ils sont sortis chacun de son côté* ou *de leur côté; — remettre des livres chacun à sa place* ou *à leur place.*

VERBE.

Verbes composés. — On tolérera la suppression de l'apostrophe et du trait d'union dans les verbes composés. Ex.: *entrouvrir, entrecroiser.*

Trait d'union. — On tolérera l'absence du trait d'union entre le verbe et le pronom sujet placé après le verbe. Ex.: *est il ?*

Différence du sujet apparent et du sujet réel. — Ex.: *sa maladie sont des vapeurs.* Il n'y a pas lieu d'enseigner de règles pour des constructions semblables, dont l'emploi ne peut être étudié utilement que dans la lecture et l'explication des textes. C'est une question de style et non de grammaire, qui ne saurait figurer ni dans les exercices élémentaires ni dans les examens.

Accord du verbe précédé de plusieurs sujets non unis par la conjonction *et.* — Si les sujets ne sont pas résumés par un mot indéfini tel que *tout, rien, chacun,* on tolérera toujours la construction du verbe au pluriel. Ex.: *sa bonté, sa douceur le font admirer.*

Accord du verbe précédé de plusieurs sujets au singulier unis par *ni, comme, avec, ainsi que* **et autres locutions équivalentes.** — On tolérera toujours le verbe au pluriel. Ex.: *ni la douceur ni la force n'y peuvent rien* ou *n'y peut rien; — la santé comme la fortune demandent à être ménagées* ou *demande à être ménagée; — le général avec quelques officiers sont sortis* ou *est sorti du camp; — le chat ainsi que le tigre sont des carnivores* ou *est un carnivore.*

Accord du verbe quand le sujet est un mot collectif. — Toutes les fois que le collectif est accompagné d'un complément au pluriel, on tolérera l'accord du verbe avec le complément. Ex.: *un peu de connaissances suffit* ou *suffisent.*

Accord du verbe quand le sujet est *plus d'un.* — L'usage actuel étant de construire le verbe au singulier avec le sujet *plus d'un,* on tolérera la construction du verbe au singulier, même lorsque *plus d'un* est suivi d'un complément au pluriel. Ex.: *plus d'un de ces hommes était* ou *étaient à plaindre.*

Accord du verbe précédé de *un de ceux (une de celles) qui.* — Dans quels cas le verbe de la proposition relative doit-il être construit au pluriel, et dans quels cas au singulier? C'est une délicatesse de langage qu'on n'essaiera pas d'indroduire dans les exercices élémentaires ni dans les examens.

C'est, ce sont. — Comme il règne une grande diversité d'usage relativement à l'emploi régulier de *c'est* et de *ce sont,* et que les

meilleurs auteurs ont employé *c'est* pour annoncer un substantif au pluriel ou un pronom de la troisième personne au pluriel, on tolérera dans tous les cas l'emploi de *c'est* au lieu de *ce sont.* Ex.: *c'est* ou *ce sont des montagnes et des précipices.*

Concordance ou correspondance des temps. — On tolérera le présent du subjonctif au lieu de l'imparfait dans les propositions subordonnées dépendant de propositions dont le verbe est au conditionnel présent. Ex.: *il faudrait qu'il vienne* ou *qu'il vînt.*

PARTICIPE.

Participe présent et adjectif verbal. — Il convient de s'en tenir à la règle générale d'après laquelle on distingue le participe de l'adjectif en ce que le premier indique l'action, et le second l'état. Il suffit que les élèves et les candidats fassent preuve de bon sens dans les cas douteux. On devra éviter avec soin les subtilités dans les exercices. Ex.: *des sauvages vivent errant* ou *errants dans les bois.*

Participe passé. — Il n'y a rien à changer à la règle d'après laquelle le participe passé construit comme épithète doit s'accorder avec le mot qualifié, et construit comme attribut avec le verbe *être* ou un verbe intransitif doit s'accorder avec le sujet. Ex.: *des fruits gâtés; — ils sont tombés; — elles sont tombées.*

Pour le participe passé construit avec l'auxiliaire *avoir,* lorsque le participe passé est suivi soit d'un infinitif, soit d'un participe présent ou passé, on tolérera qu'il reste invariable, quels que soient le genre et le nombre des compléments qui précèdent. Ex.: *les fruits que je me suis laissé* ou *laissés prendre; — les sauvages que l'on a trouvé* ou *trouvés errant dans les bois.* Dans le cas où le participe passé est précédé d'une expression collective, on pourra à volonté le faire accorder avec le collectif ou avec son complément. Ex.: *la foule d'hommes que j'ai vue* ou *vus.*

ADVERBE.

Ne **dans les propositions subordonnées.** — L'emploi de cette négation dans un très grand nombre de propositions subordonnées donne lieu à des règles compliquées, difficiles, abusives, souvent en contradiction avec l'usage des écrivains les plus classiques.

Sans faire de règles différentes suivant que les propositions dont elles dépendent sont affirmatives ou négatives ou interrogatives, on tolérera la suppression de la négation *ne* dans les propositions subordonnées dépendant de verbes ou de locutions signifiant:

Empêcher, défendre, éviter que, etc. Ex.: *défendre qu'on vienne* ou *qu'on ne vienne;*

Craindre, désespérer, avoir peur, de peur que, etc. **Ex.**: *de peur qu'il aille* ou *qu'il n'aille;*

Douter, contester, nier que, etc. **Ex.**: *je ne doute pas que la chose soit vraie* ou *ne soit vraie;*

Il tient à peu, il ne tient pas à, il s'en faut que, etc. **Ex.**: *il ne tient pas à moi que cela se fasse* ou *ne se fasse.*

On tolérera de même la suppression de cette négation après les comparatifs et les mots indiquant une comparaison: *autre, autrement que,* etc. Ex.: *l'année a été meilleure qu'on l'espérait* ou *qu'on ne l'espérait; — les résultats sont autres qu'on le croyait* ou *qu'on ne le croyait.*

De même, après les locutions *à moins que, avant que.* **Ex.**: *à moins qu'on accorde le pardon* ou *qu'on n'accorde le pardon.*

OBSERVATION.

Il conviendra, dans les examens, de ne pas compter comme fautes graves celles qui ne prouvent rien contre l'intelligence et le véritable savoir des candidats, mais qui prouvent seulement l'ignorance de quelque finesse ou de quelque subtilité grammaticale.

Vu pour être annexé à l'arrêté du 26 février 1901.

Le Ministre de l'Instruction publique et des Beaux-Arts,

GEORGES LEYGUES.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

The rules appear to us to be clearly given, they are explained by examples, and the exercises are quite sufficient.

To this **method** *is entirely due the enormous success with which the* **Gaspey-Otto-Sauer** *textbooks have met; most other grammars either content themselves with giving the theoretical exposition of the grammatical forms and trouble the pupil with a confused mass of the most far-fetched* **irregularities and exceptions without ever applying them,** *or go to the other extreme, and* **simply teach him to repeat in a parrot-like manner a few colloquial phrases** *without letting him grasp the real genius of the foreign language.*

The system referred to is easily discoverable: 1. in the arrangement of the grammar; 2. in the endeavour to enable the pupil to understand a regular text as soon as possible, and above all to teach him to **speak** *the foreign language; this latter point was considered by the authors so particularly characteristic of their works, that they have styled them — to distinguish them from other works of a similar kind —* **Conversational Grammars.**

The first series comprises manuals for the use of **Englishmen** *and consists of 38 volumes.*

Our admiration for this rich collection of works, for the method displayed and the fertile genius of certain of the authors, is increased when we examine the other **series**, *which are intended for the use of foreigners.*

In these works the chief difficulty under which several of the authors have laboured, has been the necessity of teaching a language in a foreign diom; not to mention the peculiar difficulties which the German idiom offers in writing school-books for the study of that language.

We must confess that for those persons who, from a **practical** *point of view, wish to learn a foreign language sufficiently well to enable them to* **write** *and* **speak** *it with ease, the authors have set down the grammatical rules in such a way, that it is equally easy to understand and to learn them.*

Moreover, we cannot but commend the elegance and neatness of the **type** *and* **binding** *of the books. It is doubtless on this account too that these volumes have been received with so much favour and that several have reached such a large circulation.*

We willingly testify that the whole collection gives proof of much care and industry, both with regard to the aims it has in view and the way in which these have been carried out, and, moreover, reflects great credit on the editor, this collection being in reality quite an exceptional thing of its kind."

. . . . t.

(Extract from the Literary Review.)

All books bound.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

	s.	d.
English Editions.		
Elementary **Modern Armenian** Grammar by Gulian	3	—
Dutch Conversation-Grammar by Valette. 2. Ed.	5	—
Key to the Dutch Convers.-Grammar by Valette	2	—
Dutch Reader by Valette. 2. Ed.	3	—
French Conversation-Grammar by Otto. 11. Ed.	5	—
Key to the French Convers.-Grammar by Otto. 6. Ed.	2	—
Elementary French Grammar by Wright. 2. Ed.	2	—
Materials for transl. English into French by Otto. 4. Ed.	2	6
French Dialogues by Otto-Corkran	2	—
German Conversation-Grammar by Otto. 28. Ed.	5	—
Key to the German Convers.-Grammar by Otto. 20. Ed.	2	—
Elementary German Grammar by Otto. 7. Ed.	2	—
First German Book by Otto. 8. Ed.	1	6
German Reader. I. 7. Ed.; II. 5. Ed.; III. 2. Ed. by Otto à	2	6
Materials for tr. Engl. into Germ. by Otto-Wright. Part I. 7. Ed.	2	6
Key to the Mater. f. tr. Engl. i. Germ. I. by Otto. 3. Ed.	2	—
Materials for tr. Engl. into Germ. by Otto. Part II. 3. Ed.	2	6
German Dialogues by Otto. 4. Ed.	1	6
Accidence of the German language by Otto-Wright. 2. Ed.	1	6
Handbook of English and German Idioms by Lange	2	—
German Verbs with their appropriate prepositions etc. by Tebbitt	1	—
Italian Conversation-Grammar by Sauer. 8. Ed.	5	—
Key to the Italian Convers.-Grammar by Sauer. 7. Ed.	2	—
Elementary Italian Grammar by Motti. 2. Ed.	2	—
Italian Reader by Cattaneo	2	6
Italian Dialogues by Motti	2	—
Modern Persian Conversation-Grammar by St. Clair-Tisdall	10	—
Key to the Mod. Persian Convers.-Grammar by St. Clair-Tisdall	2	—
Portuguese Conversation-Grammar by Kordgien and Kunow	5	—
Key to the Portuguese Convers.-Grammar by Kordgien and Kunow	2	—
Russian Conversation-Grammar by Motti. 2. Ed.	6	—
Key to the Russian Convers.-Grammar by Motti. 2. Ed.	2	—
Elementary Russian Grammar by Motti. 2. Ed.	2	—
Key to the Elementary Russian Grammar by Motti. 2. Ed.	1	—
Russian Reader by Werkhaupt and Roller	2	—
Spanish Conversation-Grammar by Sauer-de Arteaga. 7. Ed.	4	—
Key to the Spanish Convers.-Grammar by Sauer-de Arteaga. 5. Ed.	2	—
Elementary Spanish Grammar by Pavia	2	—
Spanish Reader by Sauer-Röhrich. 2. Ed.	4	—
Spanish Dialogues by Sauer-Corkran	2	—
Elementary **Swedish** Grammar by Fort	2	—
Arabic Edition.		
Kleine **deutsche** Sprachlehre für Araber von Hartmann	3	—
Armenian Edition.		
Elementary **English** Grammar for Armenians by Gulian	3	—

Julius Groos, London. Paris. Rome. St. Petersburgh. Heidelberg.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

	s.
Bulgarian Edition.	
Kleine **deutsche** Sprachlehre für Bulgaren von Gawriysky . .	2
German Editions.	
Arabische Konversations-Grammatik v. Harder	10
Schlüssel dazu v. Harder	3
Chinesische Konversations-Grammatik v. Seidel	8
Schlüssel dazu v. Seidel	1
Kleine chinesische Sprachlehre v. Seidel	2
Schlüssel dazu v. Seidel	1
Dänische Konversations-Grammatik v. Wied	5
Schlüssel dazu v. Wied	2
Duala Sprachlehre und Wörterbuch von Seidel	2
Englische Konversations-Grammatik v. Gaspey-Runge. 23. Aufl.	4
Schlüssel dazu v. Runge. (Nur für Lehrer und zum Selbstunterricht.) 3. Aufl.	2
Englisches Konversations-Lesebuch v. Gaspey-Runge. 6. Aufl. . .	3
Kleine englische Sprachlehre v. Otto-Runge. 5. Aufl.	2
Englische Gespräche v. Runge. 2. Aufl.	2
Materialien z. Übersetzen ins Englische v. Otto-Runge. 3. Aufl. . .	2
Englische Chrestomathie v. Süpfle-Wright. 9. Aufl.	4
Französische Konversations-Grammatik v. Otto-Runge. 27. Aufl.	4
Schlüssel dazu v. Runge. (Nur für Lehrer und zum Selbstunterricht.) 4. Aufl.	2
Franz. Konv.-Lesebuch I. 9. Aufl., II. 5. Aufl. v. Otto-Runge. à . .	2
Franz. Konv.-Leseb. f. Mädchsch. v. Otto-Runge I. 5. Aufl., II. 3. Aufl. à	2
Kleine französische Sprachlehre v. Otto-Runge. 7. Aufl.	2
Französische Gespräche v. Otto-Runge. 7. Aufl.	2
Französisches Lesebuch v. Süpfle. 11. Aufl.	3
Japanische Konversations-Grammatik von Plaut	6
Schlüssel dazu von Plaut	2
Italienische Konversations-Grammatik v. Sauer. 11. Aufl. . .	4
Schlüssel dazu v. Cattaneo. (Nur für Lehrer und zum Selbstunterricht.) 3. Aufl.	2
Italienisches Konversations-Lesebuch v. Sauer. 5. Aufl.	4
Italienische Chrestomathie v. Cattaneo. 2. Aufl.	2
Kleine italienische Sprachlehre v. Sauer. 8. Aufl.	2
Italienische Gespräche v. Sauer-Motti. 4. Aufl.	2
Übungsstücke zum Übers. a. d. Deutschen i. Ital. v. Lardelli. 4. Aufl.	2
Neugriechische Konversations-Grammatik v. Petraris	6
Schlüssel dazu v. Petraris	2
Lehrbuch der neugriechischen Volkssprache v. Petraris	3
Niederländische Konversations-Grammatik v. Valette. 2. Aufl.	5
Schlüssel dazu v. Valette	2
Niederländisches Konv.-Lesebuch v. Valette. 2. Aufl.	3
Kleine niederländische Sprachlehre v. Valette. 2. Aufl.	2
Polnische Konversations-Grammatik v. Wicherkiewicz. 2. Aufl. .	5
Schlüssel dazu v. Wicherkiewicz. 2. Aufl.	2
Portugiesische Konversations-Grammatik v. Kordgien. 2. Aufl.	5
Schlüssel dazu v. Kordgien. 2. Aufl.	2
Kleine portugiesische Sprachlehre v. Kordgien. 3. Aufl.	2
Russische Konversations-Grammatik v. Fuchs-Wyczliński. 4. Aufl.	5
Schlüssel dazu v. Fuchs-Wyczliński. 4. Aufl.	2
Russisches Konversations-Lesebuch v. Werkhaupt	2
Kleine russische Sprachlehre v. Motti. 2. Aufl.	2
Schlüssel dazu v. Motti. 2. Aufl.	1

Julius Groos, London. Paris. Rome. St. Petersburgh. Heidelberg.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

	s.	d.
German Editions.		
Schwedische Konversations-Grammatik v. Walter	5	—
Schlüssel dazu v. Walter	2	—
Kleine schwedische Sprachlehre v. Fort	2	—
Spanische Konversations-Grammatik v. Sauer-Ruppert. 8. Aufl.	4	—
Schlüssel dazu v. Ruppert. 2. Aufl.	2	—
Spanisches Lesebuch v. Sauer-Röhrich. 2. Aufl.	4	—
Kleine spanische Sprachlehre v. Sauer. 5. Aufl.	2	—
Spanische Gespräche v. Sauer. 3. Aufl.	2	—
Spanische Rektionsliste v. Sauer-Kordgien	2	—
Suahili Konversations-Grammatik v. Seidel	5	—
Schlüssel dazu v. Seidel	2	—
Suahili Wörterbuch v. Seidel	2	6
Türkische Konversations-Grammatik v. Jehlitschka	8	—
Schlüssel dazu v. Jehlitschka	3	—
Kleine **ungarische** Sprachlehre v. Nagy	2	—
French Editions.		
Grammaire **allemande** par Otto-Nicolas. 17. Éd.	4	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la Grammaire allemande par Otto-Nicolas. 6. Éd.	2	—
Petite grammaire allemande par Otto-Verrier. 9. Éd.	2	—
Lectures allemandes par Otto. I. part. 6. Éd.	2	—
Lectures allemandes par Otto. II. part. 5. Éd.	2	—
Lectures allemandes par Otto. III. part. 2. Éd.	2	—
Erstes deutsches Lesebuch von Verrier	2	6
Conversations allemandes par Otto. 4. Éd.	2	—
Grammaire **anglaise** par Mauron-Verrier. 9. Éd.	4	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la Grammaire anglaise par Mauron-Verrier. 3. Éd.	2	—
Petite grammaire anglaise par Mauron. 5. Éd.	2	—
Lectures anglaises par Mauron. 2. Éd.	3	—
Conversations anglaises par Corkran	2	—
Grammaire **italienne** par Sauer. 10. Éd.	4	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la Grammaire italienne par Sauer. 6. Éd.	2	—
Petite grammaire italienne par Motti. 3. Éd.	2	—
Chrestomathie italienne par Cattaneo. 2. Éd.	2	—
Conversations italiennes par Motti	2	—
Grammaire **néerlandaise** par Valette. 2. Éd.	5	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la Grammaire néerlandaise par Valette	2	—
Lectures néerlandaises par Valette. 2. Ed.	2	—
Grammaire **portugaise** par Armez	4	—
Corrigé de la Grammaire portugaise par Armez	2	—
Grammaire **russe** par Fuchs 3. Éd.	5	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la Grammaire russe par Fuchs. 3. Éd.	2	—
Petite grammaire russe par Motti	2	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la petite grammaire russe par Motti	1	—
Lectures russes par Werkhaupt et Roller	2	—
Grammaire **espagnole** par Sauer-Serrano. 5. Éd.	4	—
Corrigé des thèmes de la gramm. espagn. par Sauer-Serrano. 4. Éd.	2	—
Petite grammaire espagnole par Tanty	2	—
Lectures espagnoles par Sauer-Röhrich. 2. Éd.	4	—
Petite grammaire **suédoise** par Fort	2	—

Julius Groos, London. Paris. Rome. St. Petersburgh. Heidelberg.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

	s.
Greek Editions.	
Kleine **deutsche** Sprachlehre für Griechen von Maltos	4
Deutsche Gespräche für Griechen von Maltos	2
Italian Editions.	
Grammatica **tedesca** di Sauer-Ferrari. 6. Ed	4
Chiave della Grammatica tedesca di Sauer-Ferrari. 2. Ed.	2
Grammatica elementare tedesca di Otto. 5. Ed.	2
Letture tedesche di Otto. 4. Ed.	2
Antologia tedesca di Verdaro	3
Conversazioni tedesche di Motti. 2. Ed.	2
Avviamento al trad. dal ted. in ital. di Lardelli. 4. Ed.	2
Grammatica **inglese** di Sauer-Pavia. 4. Ed.	4
Chiave della grammatica inglese di Sauer-Pavia. 2. Ed.	2
Grammatica elementare inglese di Pavia. 3. Ed.	2
Grammatica **francese** di Motti. 2. Ed.	4
Chiave della grammatica francese di Motti.	2
Grammatica elementare francese di Sauer-Motti. 2. Ed.	2
Grammatica **spagnuola** di Pavia. 2. Ed.	5
Chiave della Grammatica spagnuola di Pavia	2
Grammatica elementare spagnuola di Pavia. 2. Ed.	2
Dutch Edition.	
Kleine **Hoogduitsche** Grammatica door Schwippert. 2. Dr.	2
Polish Edition.	
Kleine **deutsche** Sprachlehre für Polen von Paulus	2
Portuguese Editions.	
Grammatica **allemã** por Otto-Prévôt. 2. Ed.	4
Chave da Grammatica allemã por Otto-Prévôt	2
Grammatica elementar allemã por Otto-Prévôt. 2. Ed.	2
Grammatica **franceza** por Tanty	4
Chave da Grammatica franceza por Tanty	2
Rouman Editions.	
Gramatică **germană** de Leist	4
Cheea gramaticiĭ germane de Leist	2
Elemente de gramatică germană de Leist. 2. Ed.	2
Conversaţiunĭ germane de Leist	2
Gramatică **francesă** de Leist	4
Cheea gramaticiĭ francese de Leist	2
Elemente de gramatică francesă de Leist. 2. Ed.	2
Conversaţiunĭ francese de Leist	2

Julius Groos, London. Paris. Rome. St. Petersburgh. Heidelberg.

Method Gaspey-Otto-Sauer

for the study of modern languages.

teacher is of any use. But the number of those who write grammars, the late respected Dr. Ahn down to those who merely write in ord let their own small light shine is too large. Their aim, after all, place the pupil as soon as possible on his own feet i. e. to render a te superfluous, and to save time and money.

Then the saying holds good: «They shall be known by their wo and for that reason we say here a few words in favour of the books o Gaspey-Otto-Sauer Method which have been published by Mr. Julius G

Valuable though these books have proved themselves to be for use at school, it is for private tuition that they are absolutely indispen They just contain what I claim for such books, not too much and not little. The chapters of the various volumes are easily comprehended are arranged in such a way that they can well be mastered from lesson to the other; besides, the subject-matter is worked out so as to the pupil from the commencement to converse in the foreign tongue.

What success these books have met with will best be seen from the increasing number of their publications which comprise, in different groups lating to Englishmen, Germans, Frenchmen, Italians, Spaniards, Russians etc. not less than 160 works the following volumes of which I have successfu used myself and am still using for the instruction of Germans: — the Fre grammar (24th. edition), the English grammar (21st. edition), the Spa Italian, Dutch, and Russian grammars; for English and French students the German grammar, not to mention minor auxiliary works by the same

It is surprising what splendid results one can obtain by means of method in a period of 6 to 12 months. After such a course the stu is enabled to instruct himself in commercial correspondence in a for language without a master's helping hand.» (.....)

The Publisher is untiringly engaged in extending the range of edu tional works issuing from his Press. A number of new books are now course of preparation.

The new editions are constantly improved and kept up to date.

Julius Groos London Paris Rome St. Petersburgh Heidelberg